A basis for a quotient of symmetric polynomials (draft)

Darij Grinberg

March 18, 2021

Abstract. Consider the ring $S$ of symmetric polynomials in $k$ variables over an arbitrary base ring $k$. Fix $k$ scalars $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k \in k$.

Let $I$ be the ideal of $S$ generated by $h_{n-k+1} - a_1, h_{n-k+2} - a_2, \ldots, h_n - a_k$, where $h_i$ is the $i$-th complete homogeneous symmetric polynomial.

The quotient ring $S/I$ generalizes both the usual and the quantum cohomology of the Grassmannian.

We show that $S/I$ has a $k$-module basis consisting of (residue classes of) Schur polynomials fitting into an $(n-k) \times k$-rectangle; and that its multiplicative structure constants satisfy the same $S_3$-symmetry as those of the Grassmannian cohomology. We prove a Pieri rule and a “rim hook algorithm”, and conjecture a positivity property generalizing that of Gromov-Witten invariants. We construct two further bases of $S/I$ as well.

We also study the quotient of the whole polynomial ring (not just the symmetric polynomials) by the ideal generated by the same $k$ polynomials as $I$.

Contents

1. Introduction ............................................................................................................ 3
   1.1. Acknowledgments .......................................................................................... 3

2. The basis theorems ............................................................................................... 3
   2.1. Definitions and notations ............................................................................. 3
   2.2. The basis theorem for $P/J$ ......................................................................... 4
   2.3. The basis theorem for $S/I$ ......................................................................... 5

3. A fundamental identity ......................................................................................... 7
1. Introduction

This is still a draft – proofs are at various levels of detail, and the order of the results reflects the order in which I found them more than the order in which they are most reasonable to read. This draft will probably be split into several smaller papers for publication. I recommend [Grinbe19] as a quick survey of the main results proved here.

This work is devoted to a certain construction that generalizes both the regular and the quantum cohomology ring of the Grassmannian [Postni05]. This construction is purely algebraic – we do not know any geometric meaning for it at this point – but shares some basic properties with quantum cohomology, such as an $S_3$-symmetry of its structure constants (generalizing the $S_3$-symmetry for Littlewood-Richardson coefficients and Gromov-Witten invariants) and conjecturally a positivity as well. All our arguments are algebraic and combinatorial.

1.1. Acknowledgments

DG thanks Dongkwan Kim, Alex Postnikov, Victor Reiner, Mark Shimozono, Josh Swanson, Kaisa Taipale, and Anders Thorup for enlightening conversations, and the Mathematisches Forschungsinstitut Oberwolfach for its hospitality during part of the writing process. The SageMath computer algebra system [SageMath] has been used for experimentation leading up to some of the results below.

2. The basis theorems

2.1. Definitions and notations

Let $\mathbb{N}$ denote the set $\{0, 1, 2, \ldots\}$. Let $k$ be a commutative ring. Let $k \in \mathbb{N}$.

Let $\mathcal{P}$ denote the polynomial ring $k[x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k]$. This is a graded ring, where the grading is by total degree (so $\deg x_i = 1$ for each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$).

For each $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}^k$ and each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$, we denote the $i$-th entry of $\alpha$ by $\alpha_i$ (so that $\alpha = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_k)$). For each $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^k$, we define a monomial $x^\alpha$ by $x^\alpha = x_1^{\alpha_1} x_2^{\alpha_2} \cdots x_k^{\alpha_k}$.

Let $S$ denote the ring of symmetric polynomials in $\mathcal{P}$; in other words, $S$ is the ring of invariants of the symmetric group $S_k$ acting on $\mathcal{P}$. (The action here is the one you would expect: A permutation $\sigma \in S_k$ sends a monomial $x_{i_1} x_{i_2} \cdots x_{i_m}$ to $x_{\sigma(i_1)} x_{\sigma(i_2)} \cdots x_{\sigma(i_m)}$.)

The following fact is well-known (going back to Emil Artin) and is proven (e.g.) in [LLPT95, (DIFF.1.3)] and in [Bourba03, Chapter IV, §6, no. 1, Theorem 1 c)].

---

1The particular case when $k = \mathbb{Q}$ also appears in [Garsia02, Remark 3.2]. A related result is
Proposition 2.1. The $S$-module $P$ is free with basis $(x^a)_{a \in \mathbb{N}^k}; a_i < i$ for each $i$.

Now, fix an integer $n \geq k$. For each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$, let $a_i$ be an element of $P$ with degree $< n - k + i$. (This is clearly satisfied when $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k$ are constants in $k$, but also in some other cases. Note that the $a_i$ do not have to be homogeneous.)

For each $a \in \mathbb{Z}^k$, we let $|a|$ denote the sum of the entries of the $k$-tuple $a$ (that is, $|a| = a_1 + a_2 + \cdots + a_k$).

For each $m \in \mathbb{Z}$, we let $h_m$ denote the $m$-th complete homogeneous symmetric polynomial; this is the element of $S$ defined by

$$h_m = \sum_{1 \leq i_1 \leq i_2 \leq \cdots \leq i_m \leq k} x_{i_1} x_{i_2} \cdots x_{i_m} = \sum_{a \in \mathbb{N}^k; \ |a| = m} x^a. \quad (1)$$

(Thus, $h_0 = 1$, and $h_m = 0$ when $m < 0$.)

Let $J$ be the ideal of $P$ generated by the $k$ differences

$$h_{n-k+1} - a_1, h_{n-k+2} - a_2, \ldots, h_n - a_k. \quad (2)$$

If $M$ is a $k$-module and $N$ is a submodule of $M$, then the projection of any $m \in M$ onto the quotient $M/N$ (that is, the congruence class of $m$ modulo $N$) will be denoted by $\overline{m}$.

2.2. The basis theorem for $P/J$

The following is our first result:

Theorem 2.2. The $k$-module $P/J$ is free with basis $(\overline{x^a})_{a \in \mathbb{N}^k}; a_i < n - k + i$ for each $i$.

Example 2.3. Let $n = 5$ and $k = 2$. Then, $P = k[x_1, x_2]$, and $J$ is the ideal of $P$ generated by the 2 differences

$$h_4 - a_1 = \left(x_1^4 + x_1^3 x_2 + x_1^2 x_2^2 + x_1 x_2^3 + x_2^4\right) - a_1 \quad \text{and}$$

$$h_5 - a_2 = \left(x_1^5 + x_1^4 x_2 + x_1^3 x_2^2 + x_1^2 x_2^3 + x_1 x_2^4 + x_2^5\right) - a_2.$$

Theorem 2.2 yields that the $k$-module $P/J$ is free with basis $(\overline{x^a})_{a \in \mathbb{N}^2; a_i < 3+i}$ for each $i$; this basis can also be rewritten as $(\overline{x_1^{a_1} x_2^{a_2}})_{a_1 \in \{0,1,2,3\}; a_2 \in \{0,1,2,3,4\}}$. As a consequence, any $\overline{x_1^{b_1} x_2^{b_2}} \in P/J$ can be written as a linear combination of elements of this basis. For example,

$$\overline{x_1^4} = a_1 - \overline{x_1^3 x_2} - \overline{x_1^2 x_2^2} - \overline{x_1 x_2^3} - \overline{x_2^4} \quad \text{and}$$

$$\overline{x_2^5} = a_2 - a_1 \overline{x_1}.$$
These expressions will become more complicated for higher values of $n$ and $k$.

Theorem 2.2 is related to the second part of [CoKrWa09, Proposition 2.9] (and our proof below can be viewed as an elaboration of the argument sketched in the last paragraph of [CoKrWa09, proof of Proposition 2.9]).

2.3. The basis theorem for $S/I$

To state our next result, we need some more notations.

**Definition 2.4.** (a) We define the concept of partitions (of an integer) as in [GriRei20, Chapter 2]. Thus, a partition is a weakly decreasing infinite sequence $(\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots)$ of nonnegative integers such that all but finitely many $i$ satisfy $\lambda_i = 0$. We identify each partition $(\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots)$ with the finite list $(\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_p)$ whenever $p \in \mathbb{N}$ has the property that $(\lambda_i = 0$ for all $i > p)$.

For example, the partition $\left(3, 1, 1, 0, 0, \ldots \overset{\text{zeroes}}{\phantom{\lambda}} \right)$ is identified with $(3, 1, 1, 0)$ and with $(3, 1, 1)$.

(b) A part of a partition $\lambda$ means a nonzero entry of $\lambda$.

(c) Let $P_{k,n}$ denote the set of all partitions that have at most $k$ parts and have the property that each of their parts is $\leq n - k$. (Visually speaking, $P_{k,n}$ is the set of all partitions whose Young diagram fits into a $k \times (n - k)$-rectangle.)

(d) We let $\emptyset$ denote the empty partition $()$.

**Example 2.5.** If $n = 4$ and $k = 2$, then

$$P_{2,4} = \{ \emptyset, (1), (2), (1, 1), (2, 1), (2, 2) \}.$$  

If $n = 5$ and $k = 2$, then

$$P_{2,5} = \{ \emptyset, (1), (2), (3), (1, 1), (2, 1), (3, 1), (2, 2), (3, 2), (3, 3) \}.$$  

It is well-known (and easy to see) that $P_{k,n}$ is a finite set of size $\binom{n}{k}$. (Indeed, the map

$$P_{k,n} \to \left\{ (a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k) \in \{1, 2, \ldots, n\}^k \mid a_1 > a_2 > \cdots > a_k \right\},$$

$$\lambda \mapsto (\lambda_1 + k, \lambda_2 + k - 1, \ldots, \lambda_k + 1)$$

is easily seen to be well-defined and to be a bijection; but the set

$$\left\{ (a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k) \in \{1, 2, \ldots, n\}^k \mid a_1 > a_2 > \cdots > a_k \right\}$$

has size $\binom{n}{k}$. )
Definition 2.6. For any partition \( \lambda \), we let \( s_\lambda \) denote the Schur polynomial in \( x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k \) corresponding to the partition \( \lambda \). This Schur polynomial is what is called \( s_\lambda(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k) \) in [GriRei20, Chapter 2]. Note that

\[
s_\lambda = 0 \quad \text{if } \lambda \text{ has more than } k \text{ parts.} \quad (3)
\]

If \( \lambda \) is any partition, then the Schur polynomial \( s_\lambda = s_\lambda(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k) \) is symmetric and thus belongs to \( S \).

We now state our next fundamental fact:

Theorem 2.7. Assume that \( a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k \) belong to \( S \). Let \( I \) be the ideal of \( S \) generated by the \( k \) differences (2). Then, the \( k \)-module \( S/I \) is free with basis \( (s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_k} \).

We will prove Theorem 2.7 below; a different proof has been given by Weinfeld in [Weinfel19, Corollary 6.2].

The \( k \)-algebra \( S/I \) generalizes several constructions in the literature:

- If \( k = \mathbb{Z} \) and \( a_1 = a_2 = \cdots = a_k = 0 \), then \( S/I \) becomes the cohomology ring of the Grassmannian of \( k \)-dimensional subspaces in an \( n \)-dimensional space (see, e.g., [Fulton99, §9.4]); the elements of the basis \( (s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_k} \) correspond to the Schubert classes.

- If \( k = \mathbb{Z}[q] \) and \( a_1 = a_2 = \cdots = a_{k-1} = 0 \) and \( a_k = -(-1)^k q \), then \( S/I \) becomes isomorphic to the quantum cohomology ring of the same Grassmannian (see [Postni05]). Indeed, our ideal \( I \) becomes the \( J^q_{kn} \) of [Postni05, (6)] in this case, and Theorem 2.7 generalizes the fact that the quotient \( (\Lambda_k \otimes \mathbb{Z}[q]) / J^q_{kn} \) in [Postni05, (6)] has basis \( (s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{kn}} \).

One goal of this paper is to provide a purely algebraic foundation for the study of the standard and quantum cohomology rings of the Grassmannian, without having to resort to geometry for proofs of the basic properties of these rings. In particular, Theorem 2.7 shows that the “abstract Schubert classes” \( s_\lambda \) (with \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \)) form a basis of the \( k \)-module \( S/I \), whereas Corollary 6.24 further below shows that the structure constants of the \( k \)-algebra \( S/I \) with respect to this basis (we may call them “generalized Gromov-Witten invariants”) satisfy an \( S_3 \)-symmetry. These two properties are two of the facts for whose proofs [Postni05] relies on algebro-geometric literature; thus, our paper helps provide an alternative footing for [Postni05] using only combinatorics and algebra.²

²This, of course, presumes that one is willing to forget the cohomological definition of the ring \( \text{QH}^*(\text{Gr}_{kn}) \), and instead to define it algebraically as the quotient ring \( (\Lambda_k \otimes \mathbb{Z}[q]) / J^q_{kn} \), using the notations of [Postni05].

---

6
Remark 2.8. The $k$-algebra $\mathcal{P}/J$ somewhat resembles the “splitting algebra” $\text{Split}_p^q$ from [LakTho12] §1.3; further analogies between these concepts can be made as we study the former. For example, the basis we give in Theorem 2.2 is like the basis in [LakTho12] (1.5). It is not currently clear to us whether there is more than analogies.

3. A fundamental identity

Let us use the notations $h_m$ and $e_m$ for complete homogeneous symmetric polynomials and elementary symmetric polynomials in general. Thus, for any $m \in \mathbb{Z}$ and any $p$ elements $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_p$ of a commutative ring, we set

$$h_m(y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_p) = \sum_{1 \leq i_1 \leq i_2 \leq \cdots \leq i_m \leq p} y_{i_1}y_{i_2} \cdots y_{i_m} \quad \text{and} \quad (4)$$

$$e_m(y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_p) = \sum_{1 \leq i_1 < i_2 < \cdots < i_m \leq p} y_{i_1}y_{i_2} \cdots y_{i_m}. \quad (5)$$

(Thus, $h_0(y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_p) = 1$ and $e_0(y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_p) = 1$. Also, $e_m(y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_p) = 0$ for all $m > p$. Also, for any $m < 0$, we have $h_m(y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_p) = 0$ and $e_m(y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_p) = 0$. Finally, what we have previously called $h_m$ without any arguments can now be rewritten as $h_m(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k)$. Similarly, we shall occasionally abbreviate $e_m(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k)$ as $e_m$.)

Lemma 3.1. Let $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k + 1\}$ and $p \in \mathbb{N}$. Then,

$$h_p(x_i, x_{i+1}, \ldots, x_k) = \sum_{t=0}^{i-1} (-1)^t \binom{i}{t} h_{p-t}(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) h_t(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k).$$

Notice that if $i = k + 1$, then the term $h_p(x_i, x_{i+1}, \ldots, x_k)$ on the left hand side of Lemma 3.1 is understood to be $h_p$ of an empty list of vectors; this is 1 when $p = 0$ and 0 otherwise.

Lemma 3.1 is actually a particular case of [Grinbe16a, detailed version, Theorem 3.15] (applied to $a = x_i \in k[[x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots]]$ and $b = h_p(x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots) \in \text{QSym}$). However, we shall give a more elementary proof of it here. This proof relies on the following two basic identities:

---

3Here, we are using the ring $k[[x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots]]$ of formal power series in infinitely many variables $x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots$, and its subring $\text{QSym}$ of quasisymmetric functions. See [Grinbe16a] for a brief introduction to both of these. Note that the symmetric function $h_p(x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots)$ is called $h_p$ in [Grinbe16a].
Lemma 3.2. Let $A$ be a commutative ring. Let $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_p$ be some elements of $A$. Consider the ring $A[[u]]$ of formal power series in one indeterminate $u$ over $A$. Then, in this ring, we have

$$\sum_{q \in \mathbb{N}} h_q (y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_p) u^q = \prod_{j=1}^{p} \frac{1}{1 - y_j u}$$

(6)

and

$$\sum_{q \in \mathbb{N}} (-1)^q e_q (y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_p) u^q = \prod_{j=1}^{p} (1 - y_j u).$$

(7)

Proof of Lemma 3.2 The identity (6) can be obtained from the identities [GriRei20, (2.2.18)] by substituting $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_p, 0, 0, 0, \ldots$ for the indeterminates $x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots$ and substituting $u$ for $t$. The identity (7) can be obtained from the identities [GriRei20, (2.2.19)] by substituting $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_p, 0, 0, 0, \ldots$ for the indeterminates $x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots$ and substituting $-u$ for $t$. Thus, Lemma 3.2 is proven.

Proof of Lemma 3.1 Consider the ring $P[[u]]$ of formal power series in one indeterminate $u$ over $P$. Applying (6) to $P$ and $(x_i, x_{i+1}, \ldots, x_k)$ instead of $A$ and $(y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_p)$, we obtain

$$\sum_{q \in \mathbb{N}} h_q (x_i, x_{i+1}, \ldots, x_k) u^q = \prod_{j=1}^{k-i+1} \frac{1}{1 - x_{i+j-1} u} = \prod_{j=i}^{k} \frac{1}{1 - x_j u}.$$  

(here, we have substituted $j$ for $i + j - 1$ in the product). Applying (7) to $P$ and $(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1})$ instead of $A$ and $(y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_p)$, we obtain

$$\sum_{q \in \mathbb{N}} (-1)^q e_q (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) u^q = \prod_{j=1}^{i-1} (1 - x_j u).$$

(8)

Applying (6) to $P$ and $(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k)$ instead of $A$ and $(y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_p)$, we obtain

$$\sum_{q \in \mathbb{N}} h_q (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k) u^q = \prod_{j=1}^{k} \frac{1}{1 - x_j u}.$$  

(9)
Thus,

$$\sum_{q \in \mathbb{N}} h_q (x_i, x_{i+1}, \ldots, x_k) u^q$$

$$= \prod_{j=i}^{k} \frac{1}{1-x_j u} = \left( \prod_{j=1}^{k} \frac{1}{1-x_j u} \right) / \left( \prod_{j=i}^{k} \frac{1}{1-x_j u} \right)$$

$$= \left( \prod_{j=1}^{i-1} (1-x_j u) \right) / \left( \prod_{j=1}^{k} (1-x_j u) \right)$$

$$= \sum_{q \in \mathbb{N}} (-1)^t e_t (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) u^q = \sum_{q \in \mathbb{N}} h_q (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k) u^q$$

(by (8))

$$= \left( \sum_{q \in \mathbb{N}} (-1)^q e_q (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) u^q \right) \left( \sum_{q \in \mathbb{N}} h_q (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k) u^q \right).$$

Comparing the coefficient before $u^p$ in this equality of power series, we obtain

$$h_p (x_i, x_{i+1}, \ldots, x_k) = \sum_{t=0}^{p} (-1)^t e_t (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) h_{p-t} (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k)$$

$$= \sum_{t=0}^{\infty} (-1)^t e_t (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) h_{p-t} (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k)$$

(since $h_{p-t} (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k) = 0$ for all $t > p$)

$$= \sum_{t=0}^{i-1} (-1)^t e_t (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) h_{p-t} (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k)$$

(since $e_t (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) = 0$ for all $t > i-1$).

This proves Lemma 3.1.

**Corollary 3.3.** Let $p$ be a positive integer. Then,

$$h_p = - \sum_{t=0}^{k} (-1)^t e_t h_{p-t}.$$

**Proof of Corollary 3.3** Lemma 3.1 (applied to $i = k + 1$) yields

$$h_p (x_{k+1}, x_{k+2}, \ldots, x_k) = \sum_{t=0}^{k} (-1)^t e_t (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k) h_{p-t} (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k)$$

$$= \sum_{t=0}^{k} (-1)^t e_t h_{p-t}.$$

9
Comparing this with
\[ h_p (x_{k+1}, x_{k+2}, \ldots, x_k) = h_p \text{ (an empty list of variables)} = 0 \quad \text{ (since } p > 0), \]
we obtain
\[ 0 = \sum_{t=0}^{k} (-1)^t e_t h_{p-t} = (-1)^0 e_0 h_{p-0} + \sum_{t=1}^{k} (-1)^t e_t h_{p-t} = h_p + \sum_{t=1}^{k} (-1)^t e_t h_{p-t}. \]

Hence,
\[ h_p = - \sum_{t=1}^{k} (-1)^t e_t h_{p-t}. \]

This proves Corollary 3.3.

\[ \square \]

4. Proof of Theorem 2.2

We shall next prove Theorem 2.2 using Gröbner bases. For the concept of Gröbner bases over a commutative ring, see [Grinbe17, detailed version, §3].

We define a degree-lexicographic term order on the monomials in \( P \), where the variables are ordered by \( x_1 > x_2 > \cdots > x_k \). Explicitly, this term order is the total order on the set of monomials in \( x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k \) defined as follows: Two monomials \( x_{a_1} x_{a_2} \cdots x_{a_k} \) and \( x_{b_1} x_{b_2} \cdots x_{b_k} \) satisfy \( x_{a_1} x_{a_2} \cdots x_{a_k} > x_{b_1} x_{b_2} \cdots x_{b_k} \) if and only if

- either \( a_1 + a_2 + \cdots + a_k > b_1 + b_2 + \cdots + b_k \),

- or \( a_1 + a_2 + \cdots + a_k = b_1 + b_2 + \cdots + b_k \) and there exists some \( i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\} \) such that \( a_i > b_i \) and \( a_j = b_j \) for all \( j < i \).

This total order is a term order (in the sense of [Grinbe17, detailed version, Definition 3.5]). Fix this term order; thus it makes sense to speak of Gröbner bases of ideals.

**Proposition 4.1.** The family
\[
\left( h_{n-k+i} (x_j, x_{j+1}, \ldots, x_k) - \sum_{t=0}^{i-1} (-1)^t e_t (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) a_{i-t} \right)_{i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}}
\]
is a Gröbner basis of the ideal \( J \). (Recall that we are using the notations from (4) and (5).)
Proposition 4.1 is somewhat similar to [Sturmf08, Theorem 1.2.7] (or, equivalently, [CoLiOs15, §7.1, Proposition 5]), but not the same. Our proof of it relies on the following elementary fact:

**Lemma 4.2.** Let $A$ be a commutative ring. Let $b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_k \in A$ and $c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_k \in A$. Assume that

$$b_i \in c_i + \sum_{t=1}^{i-1} c_{i-t} A \quad (10)$$

for each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$. Then, $b_1 A + b_2 A + \cdots + b_k A = c_1 A + c_2 A + \cdots + c_k A$ (as ideals of $A$).

**Proof of Lemma 4.2.** We claim that

$$\sum_{p=1}^{j} b_p A = \sum_{p=1}^{j} c_p A \quad \text{for each } j \in \{0, 1, \ldots, k\}. \quad (11)$$

*Proof of (11):* We shall prove (11) by induction on $j$:

**Induction base:** For $j = 0$, both sides of the equality (11) are the zero ideal of $A$ (since they are empty sums of ideals of $A$). Thus, (11) holds for $j = 0$. This completes the induction base.

**Induction step:** Let $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$. Assume that (11) holds for $j = i - 1$. We must prove that (11) holds for $j = i$.

We have assumed that (11) holds for $j = i - 1$. In other words, we have

$$\sum_{p=1}^{i-1} b_p A = \sum_{p=1}^{i-1} c_p A.$$ But (10) yields $b_i \in c_i + \sum_{t=1}^{i-1} c_{i-t} A = c_i + \sum_{p=1}^{i-1} c_p A$ (here, we have substituted $p$ for $i - t$ in the sum). Thus,

$$c_i \in b_i - \sum_{p=1}^{i-1} c_p A = b_i + \sum_{p=1}^{i-1} c_p A,$$

so that

$$c_i A \subseteq \left(b_i + \sum_{p=1}^{i-1} c_p A\right) A \subseteq b_i A + \sum_{p=1}^{i-1} c_p A.$$ But from $b_i \in c_i + \sum_{p=1}^{i-1} c_p A$, we obtain

$$b_i A \subseteq \left(c_i + \sum_{p=1}^{i-1} c_p A\right) A \subseteq c_i A + \sum_{p=1}^{i-1} c_p A = \sum_{p=1}^{i} c_p A.$$

\footnote{For example, our $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k$ are elements of $k$ rather than indeterminates (although they can be indeterminates if $k$ itself is a polynomial ring), and our term order is degree-lexicographic rather than lexicographic. Thus, it should not be surprising that the families are different.}
Now,

$$\sum_{p=1}^{i} b_p A = \sum_{p=1}^{i-1} b_p A + b_i A \subseteq \sum_{p=1}^{i} c_p A + \sum_{p=1}^{i} c_p A = \sum_{p=1}^{i} c_p A. \quad \text{(since } i-1 \leq i)$$

Combining this inclusion with

$$\sum_{p=1}^{i} c_p A = \sum_{p=1}^{i-1} c_p A + c_i A \subseteq \sum_{p=1}^{i-1} c_p A + b_i A + \sum_{p=1}^{i-1} c_p A$$

$$= \sum_{p=1}^{i-1} c_p A + \sum_{p=1}^{i-1} c_p A + b_i A = \sum_{p=1}^{i-1} b_p A + b_i A = \sum_{p=1}^{i} b_p A,$$

we obtain $\sum_{p=1}^{i} b_p A = \sum_{p=1}^{i} c_p A$. In other words, (11) holds for $j = i$. This completes the induction step. Thus, (11) is proven by induction.

Now, (11) (applied to $j = k$) yields

$$\sum_{p=1}^{k} b_p A = \sum_{p=1}^{k} c_p A.$$ 

Thus,

$$b_1 A + b_2 A + \cdots + b_k A = \sum_{p=1}^{k} b_p A = \sum_{p=1}^{k} c_p A = c_1 A + c_2 A + \cdots + c_k A.$$ 

This proves Lemma 4.2.

Proof of Proposition 4.1 (sketched). For each $i \in \{1,2,\ldots,k\}$, we define a polynomial $b_i \in P$ by

$$b_i = h_{n-k+i} (x_{i}, x_{i+1}, \ldots, x_k) - \sum_{t=0}^{i-1} (-1)^t e_t (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) a_{i-t}.$$ 

Then, we must prove that the family $(b_i)_{i \in \{1,2,\ldots,k\}}$ is a Gröbner basis of the ideal $J$. We shall first prove that this family generates $J$. 

12
For each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$, we define $c_i \in \mathcal{P}$ by $c_i = h_{n-k+i} - a_i$. Then, $J$ is the ideal of $\mathcal{P}$ generated by the $k$ elements $c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_k$ (by the definition of $f$). In other words,

$$J = c_1 \mathcal{P} + c_2 \mathcal{P} + \cdots + c_k \mathcal{P}. \quad (12)$$

For each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$, we have

$$b_i = \frac{h_{n-k+i}(x_i, x_{i+1}, \ldots, x_k)}{a_i - t} - \sum_{t=0}^{i-1} (-1)^t e_t(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) a_{i-t}$$

$$= \sum_{t=0}^{i-1} (-1)^t e_t(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) h_{n-k+i-t}(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k)$$

(by Lemma 5.1 (applied to $p=n-k+i$))

$$= \sum_{t=0}^{i-1} (-1)^t e_t(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) h_{n-k+i-t}(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k)$$

$$- \sum_{t=0}^{i-1} (-1)^t e_t(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) a_{i-t}$$

$$= \sum_{t=0}^{i-1} (-1)^t e_t(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) \left( h_{n-k+i-t}(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k) - a_{i-t} \right)$$

(by the definition of $c_i$)

$$= \sum_{t=0}^{i-1} (-1)^t e_t(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) c_{i-t}$$

$$= \frac{(-1)^0 e_0(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) c_{i-0}}{c_i} + \sum_{t=1}^{i-1} (-1)^t e_t(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) c_{i-t}$$

$$\in c_i + \sum_{t=1}^{i-1} \mathcal{P} c_{i-t} = c_i + \sum_{t=1}^{i-1} c_{i-t} \mathcal{P}.$$

Hence, Lemma 4.2 (applied to $A = \mathcal{P}$) yields that $b_1 \mathcal{P} + b_2 \mathcal{P} + \cdots + b_k \mathcal{P} = c_1 \mathcal{P} + c_2 \mathcal{P} + \cdots + c_k \mathcal{P}$ (as ideals of $\mathcal{P}$). Comparing this with (12), we obtain $J = b_1 \mathcal{P} + b_2 \mathcal{P} + \cdots + b_k \mathcal{P}$. Thus, the family $(b_i)_{i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}}$ generates the ideal $J$. Furthermore, for each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$, the $i$-th element

$$b_i = h_{n-k+i}(x_i, x_{i+1}, \ldots, x_k) - \sum_{t=0}^{i-1} (-1)^t e_t(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) a_{i-t}$$

of this family has leading term $x_i^{n-k+i}$ (because the polynomial
\[ \sum_{t=0}^{i-1} (-1)^t e_t(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) a_{i-t} \text{ has degree } < n - k + i \] whereas the polynomial \( h_{n-k+i}(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k) \) is homogeneous of degree \( n - k + i \) with leading term \( x_i^{n-k+i} \). Thus, the leading terms of the \( k \) elements of this family are disjoint (in the sense that no two of these leading terms have any indeterminates in common). Thus, clearly, Buchberger’s first criterion (see, e.g., [Grinbe17, detailed version, Proposition 3.10]) shows that this family is a Gröbner basis.

**Proof of Theorem 2.7 (sketched).** This follows using the Macaulay-Buchberger basis theorem (e.g., [Grinbe17, detailed version, Proposition 3.10]) from Proposition 4.1. (Indeed, if we let \( G \) be the Gröbner basis of \( J \) constructed in Proposition 4.1, then the monomials \( x^\alpha \) for all \( \alpha \in \mathbb{N}^k \) satisfying \( \alpha_i < n - k + i \) for each \( i \) are precisely the \( G \)-reduced monomials.) \( \square \)

## 5. Proof of Theorem 2.7

Next, we shall prove Theorem 2.7.

**Convention 5.1.** For the rest of Section 5 we assume that \( a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k \) belong to \( S \).

Thus, \( a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k \) are symmetric polynomials. Moreover, recall that for each \( i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\} \), the polynomial \( a_i \) has degree \( < n - k + i \). In other words, for each \( i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\} \), we have

\[ \text{deg}(a_i) < n - k + i. \] (13)

Substituting \( i - n + k \) for \( i \) in this statement, we obtain the following: For each \( i \in \{n - k + 1, n - k + 2, \ldots, n\} \), we have

\[ \text{deg}(a_{n-k+i}) < n - k + (i - n + k) = i. \] (14)

---

**Proof.** It clearly suffices to show that for each \( t \in \{0, 1, \ldots, i-1\} \), the polynomial \( e_t(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) a_{i-t} \) has degree \( < n - k + i \).

So let us do this. Let \( t \in \{0, 1, \ldots, i-1\} \). Then, the polynomial \( a_{i-t} \) has degree \( < n - k + (i - t) \) (by the definition of \( a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k \)). In other words, \( \text{deg}(a_{i-t}) < n - k + (i - t) \). Hence, the polynomial \( e_t(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) a_{i-t} \) has degree

\[ \text{deg}(e_t(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) a_{i-t}) = \underbrace{\text{deg}(e_t(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}))}_{\leq t} + \underbrace{\text{deg}(a_{i-t})}_{< n-k+(i-t)} < t + (n - k + (i - t)) = n - k + i. \]

In other words, the polynomial \( e_t(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{i-1}) a_{i-t} \) has degree \( < n - k + i \). Qed.

**Indeed,** every term of the polynomial \( h_{n-k+i}(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k) \) has the form \( x_i^{u_i} x_{i+1}^{u_{i+1}} \cdots x_k^{u_k} \) for some nonnegative integers \( u_i, u_{i+1}, \ldots, u_k \in \mathbb{N} \) satisfying \( u_i + u_{i+1} + \cdots + u_k = n - k + i \).

Among these terms, clearly the largest one is \( x_i^{n-k+i} \).

---

\( \square \)
Let $I$ be the ideal of $S$ generated by the $k$ differences \([2]\). Hence, these differences belong to $I$. Thus,

$$h_{n-k+j} \equiv a_j \mod I \quad \text{for each } j \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}. \quad (15)$$

Renaming the index $j$ as $i - n + k$ in this statement, we obtain

$$h_i \equiv a_{i-n+k} \mod I \quad \text{for each } i \in \{n-k+1, n-k+2, \ldots, n\}. \quad (16)$$

**Lemma 5.2.** Let $A$ be a commutative $k$-algebra. Let $B$ be a commutative $A$-algebra. Assume that the $A$-module $B$ is spanned by the family $(b_u)_{u \in U} \in B^U$. Let $I$ be an ideal of $A$. Let $(a_v)_{v \in V} \in A^V$ be a family of elements of $A$ such that the $k$-module $A/I$ is spanned by the family $(\overline{a_v})_{v \in V} \in (A/I)^V$. Then, the $k$-module $B/(IB)$ is spanned by the family $(\overline{a_vb_u})_{(u,v)\in U \times V} \in (B/(IB))^{U \times V}$.

**Proof of Lemma 5.2.** Easy. Here is the proof under the assumption that the set $U$ is finite\(^8\).

Let $x \in B/(IB)$. Thus, $x = \overline{b}$ for some $b \in B$. Consider this $b$. Recall that the $A$-module $B$ is spanned by the family $(b_u)_{u \in U}$. Hence, $b = \sum_{u \in U} p_u b_u$ for some family $(p_u)_{u \in U} \in A^U$ of elements of $A$. Consider this family $(p_u)_{u \in U}$.

Recall that the $k$-module $A/I$ is spanned by the family $(\overline{a_v})_{v \in V} \in (A/I)^V$. Thus, for each $u \in U$, there exists a family $(q_{u,v})_{v \in V} \in k^V$ of elements of $k$ such that $\overline{p_u} = \sum_{v \in V} q_{u,v} \overline{a_v}$ (and such that all but finitely many $v \in V$ satisfy $q_{u,v} = 0$).

Consider this family $(q_{u,v})_{v \in V}$.

Now, recall that $B/(IB)$ is an $A/I$-module (since $B$ is an $A$-module, but each $i \in I$ clearly acts as 0 on $B/(IB)$). Now,

$$x = \overline{b} = \sum_{u \in U} p_u b_u = \left( \text{since } b = \sum_{u \in U} p_u b_u \right) = \sum_{u \in U} \overline{p_u} \overline{b_u} = \sum_{u \in U} \sum_{v \in V} q_{u,v} \overline{a_vb_u} = \sum_{(u,v) \in U \times V} q_{u,v} \overline{a_vb_u}.$$ 

Thus, $x$ belongs to the $k$-submodule of $B/(IB)$ spanned by the family $(\overline{a_vb_u})_{(u,v) \in U \times V}$. Since we have proven this for all $x \in B/(IB)$, we thus conclude that the $k$-module $B/(IB)$ is spanned by the family $(\overline{a_vb_u})_{(u,v) \in U \times V} \in (B/(IB))^{U \times V}$. This proves Lemma 5.2.$\square$

\(^8\)The case when $U$ is infinite needs only minor modifications. But we shall only use the case when $U$ is finite.
Lemma 5.3. Let $M$ be a free $k$-module with a finite basis $(b_s)_{s \in S}$. Let $(a_u)_{u \in U} \in M^U$ be a family that spans $M$. Assume that $|U| = |S|$. Then, $(a_u)_{u \in U}$ is a basis of the $k$-module $M$. (In other words: A spanning family of $M$ whose size equals the size of a basis must itself be a basis, as long as the sizes are finite.)

Proof of Lemma 5.3. Well-known (see, e.g., [GriRei20, Exercise 2.5.18 (b)]). □

Lemma 5.4. Let $i$ be an integer such that $i > n - k$. Then,

$$h_i \equiv (\text{some symmetric polynomial of degree } < i) \text{ mod } I.$$

Proof of Lemma 5.4 (sketched). We shall prove Lemma 5.4 by strong induction on $i$. Thus, we assume (as the induction hypothesis) that

$$h_j \equiv (\text{some symmetric polynomial of degree } < j) \text{ mod } I \quad (17)$$

for every $j \in \{n - k + 1, n - k + 2, \ldots, i - 1\}$.

If $i \leq n$, then (16) yields $h_i \equiv a_{i-n+k} \text{ mod } I$ (since $i \in \{n - k + 1, n - k + 2, \ldots, n\}$), which clearly proves Lemma 5.4 (since $a_{i-n+k}$ is a symmetric polynomial of degree $< i$). Thus, for the rest of this proof, we WLOG assume that $i > n$. Hence, each $t \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$ satisfies

$$i - t \in \{n - k + 1, n - k + 2, \ldots, i - 1\} \quad (18)$$

(by (17), applied to $j = i - t$).

But $i$ is a positive integer (since $i > n \geq 0$). Hence, Corollary 3.3 (applied to $p = i$) yields

$$h_i = - \sum_{t=1}^{k} (-1)^t e_t \quad \equiv (\text{some symmetric polynomial of degree } < i) \text{ mod } I,$$

(by (18))

$$\equiv - \sum_{t=1}^{k} (-1)^t e_t \cdot (\text{some symmetric polynomial of degree } < i - t)$$

$$= (\text{some symmetric polynomial of degree } < i) \text{ mod } I.$$

This completes the induction step. Thus, Lemma 5.4 is proven. □
Definition 5.5. The size of a partition $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots)$ is defined as $\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \lambda_3 + \cdots$, and is denoted by $|\lambda|$.

Definition 5.6. Let $P_k$ denote the set of all partitions with at most $k$ parts. Thus, the elements of $P_k$ are weakly decreasing $k$-tuples of nonnegative integers.

Proposition 5.7. Let $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k)$ be a partition in $P_k$. Then:

(a) We have
$$s_\lambda = \det \left( (h_{\lambda u} - u + v)_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k} \right).$$

(b) Let $p \in \{0, 1, \ldots, k\}$ be such that $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_p)$. Then,
$$s_\lambda = \det \left( (h_{\lambda u} - u + v)_{1 \leq u \leq p, 1 \leq v \leq p} \right).$$

Proof of Proposition 5.7 (b) Proposition 5.7 (b) is the well-known Jacobi-Trudi identity, and is proven in various places. (For instance, [GriRei20, (2.4.16)] states a similar formula for skew Schur functions; if we set $\mu = \emptyset$ in it and apply both sides to the variables $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k$, then we recover the claim of Proposition 5.7 (b).)

(a) We have $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k)$. Hence, Proposition 5.7 (a) is the particular case of Proposition 5.7 (b) for $p = k$.

Lemma 5.8. Let $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_\ell)$ be any partition. Let $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\}$ and $j \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\}$. Then,
$$\sum_{u \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\}; u \neq i} (\lambda_u - u) + \sum_{u \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\}; u \neq j} u = |\lambda| - (\lambda_i - i + j).$$
Proof of Lemma 5.8. We have

\[
\sum_{u \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\}; u \neq i} (\lambda_u - u) + \sum_{u \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\}; u \neq j} u
\]

\[
= \sum_{u \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\}} (\lambda_u - u) - (\lambda_i - i) = \sum_{u \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\}} u - j
\]

\[
= \sum_{u \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\}} \lambda_u - \sum_{u \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\}} u - (\lambda_i - i) + \sum_{u \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\}} u - j
\]

\[
= \sum_{u \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\}} \lambda_u - (\lambda_i - i) - j = |\lambda| - (\lambda_i - i) - j = |\lambda| - (\lambda_i - i + j).
\]

This proves Lemma 5.8. \(\square\)

Next, let us recall the definition of a cofactor of a matrix:

**Definition 5.9.** Let \(\ell \in \mathbb{N}\). Let \(R\) be a commutative ring. Let \(A \in R^{\ell \times \ell}\) be any \(\ell \times \ell\)-matrix. Let \(i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\}\) and \(j \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\}\). Then:

- (a) The \((i, j)\)-th minor of the matrix \(A\) is defined to be the determinant of the \((\ell - 1) \times (\ell - 1)\)-matrix obtained from \(A\) by removing the \(i\)-th row and the \(j\)-th column.

- (b) The \((i, j)\)-th cofactor of the matrix \(A\) is defined to \((-1)^{i+j}\) times the \((i, j)\)-th minor of \(A\).

It is known that any \(\ell \times \ell\)-matrix \(A = (a_{i,j})_{1 \leq i \leq \ell, 1 \leq j \leq \ell}\) over a commutative ring \(R\) satisfies

\[
\det A = \sum_{j=1}^{\ell} a_{i,j} \cdot (\text{the } (i, j)\text{-th cofactor of } A) \tag{19}
\]

for each \(i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\}\). (This is the Laplace expansion of the determinant of \(A\) along its \(i\)-th row.)

**Lemma 5.10.** Let \(\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_\ell)\) be any partition. Let \(i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\}\) and \(j \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\}\). Then, the \((i, j)\)-th cofactor of the matrix \((h_{\lambda_u-u+v})_{1 \leq u \leq \ell, 1 \leq v \leq \ell}\) is a homogeneous symmetric polynomial of degree \(|\lambda| - (\lambda_i - i + j)\).

**Proof of Lemma 5.10 (sketched).** This is a simple argument that inflates in length by a multiple when put on paper. You will probably have arrived at the proof long before you have finished reading the following.
For each $u \in \{1,2,\ldots,\ell\}$ and $v \in \{1,2,\ldots,\ell\}$, we define an integer $w(u,v)$ by

$$w(u,v) = \lambda_u - u + v. \quad (20)$$

Let $A$ be the matrix $\left(h_{w(u,v)}\right)_{1 \leq u \leq \ell, 1 \leq v \leq \ell}$. Let $\mu$ be the $(i,j)$-th minor of the matrix $A$. Thus, $\mu$ is the determinant of the $(\ell - 1) \times (\ell - 1)$-matrix obtained from $A$ by removing the $i$-th row and the $j$-th column (by Definition 5.9(a)). The combinatorial definition of a determinant (i.e., the definition of a determinant as a sum over all permutations) thus shows that $\mu$ is a sum of $(\ell - 1)!$ many products of the form

$$\pm h_{w(i_1,j_1)} h_{w(i_2,j_2)} \cdots h_{w(i_{\ell-1},j_{\ell-1})},$$

where $i_1, i_2, \ldots, i_{\ell-1}$ are $\ell - 1$ distinct elements of the set $\{1,2,\ldots,\ell\} \setminus \{i\}$ and where $j_1, j_2, \ldots, j_{\ell-1}$ are $\ell - 1$ distinct elements of the set $\{1,2,\ldots,\ell\} \setminus \{j\}$. Let us refer to such products as diagonal products. Hence, $\mu$ is a sum of diagonal products.

We shall now claim the following:

**Claim 1:** Each diagonal product is a homogeneous symmetric polynomial of degree $|\lambda| - (\lambda_i - i + j)$.

**[Proof of Claim 1]:** Let $d$ be a diagonal product. We must show that $d$ is a homogeneous symmetric polynomial of degree $|\lambda| - (\lambda_i - i + j)$.

We have assumed that $d$ is a diagonal product. In other words, $d$ is a product of the form

$$\pm h_{w(i_1,j_1)} h_{w(i_2,j_2)} \cdots h_{w(i_{\ell-1},j_{\ell-1})},$$

where $i_1, i_2, \ldots, i_{\ell-1}$ are $\ell - 1$ distinct elements of the set $\{1,2,\ldots,\ell\} \setminus \{i\}$ and where $j_1, j_2, \ldots, j_{\ell-1}$ are $\ell - 1$ distinct elements of the set $\{1,2,\ldots,\ell\} \setminus \{j\}$. Consider these $i_1, i_2, \ldots, i_{\ell-1}$ and these $j_1, j_2, \ldots, j_{\ell-1}$.

The numbers $i_1, i_2, \ldots, i_{\ell-1}$ are $\ell - 1$ distinct elements of the set $\{1,2,\ldots,\ell\} \setminus \{i\}$; but the latter set has only $\ell - 1$ elements altogether. Thus, these numbers $i_1, i_2, \ldots, i_{\ell-1}$ must be precisely the $\ell - 1$ elements of the set $\{1,2,\ldots,\ell\} \setminus \{i\}$ in some order. Similarly, the numbers $j_1, j_2, \ldots, j_{\ell-1}$ must be precisely the $\ell - 1$ elements of the set $\{1,2,\ldots,\ell\} \setminus \{j\}$ in some order.

For each $p \in \{1,2,\ldots,\ell - 1\}$, the element $h_{w(i_p,j_p)}$ of $S$ is homogeneous of degree $w(i_p,j_p)$ (because for each $m \in \mathbb{Z}$, the element $h_m$ of $S$ is homogeneous of degree $m$). Hence, the product $h_{w(i_1,j_1)} h_{w(i_2,j_2)} \cdots h_{w(i_{\ell-1},j_{\ell-1})}$ is homogeneous...
of degree

\[ w(i_1, j_1) + w(i_2, j_2) + \cdots + w(i_{\ell - 1}, j_{\ell - 1}) \]

\[ = \sum_{p \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell - 1\}} w(i_p, j_p) \]

(by the definition of \( w(i_p, j_p) \))

\[ = \sum_{p \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell - 1\}} \left( \lambda_{i_p} - i_p \right) + \sum_{p \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell - 1\}} j_p \]

(since \( \lambda_{i_1} - i_1 \) + \( \lambda_{i_2} - i_2 \) + \cdots + \( \lambda_{i_{\ell - 1}} - i_{\ell - 1} \) and \( \sum u \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\} \setminus \{i\} (\lambda_u - u) \) are precisely the \( \ell - 1 \) elements of the set \( \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\} \setminus \{i\} \) in some order)

\[ = \sum_{u \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\} \setminus \{i\}} (\lambda_u - u) + \sum_{u \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\} \setminus \{j\}} u \]

\[ = \sum_{u \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\} \setminus \{i\}} (\lambda_u - u) + \sum_{u \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\} \setminus \{j\}} u = |\lambda| - (\lambda_i - i + j) \]

(by Lemma 5.8). Thus, \( d \) is homogeneous of degree \( |\lambda| - (\lambda_i - i + j) \) as well (since \( d = \pm h_{w(i_1, j_1)} h_{w(i_2, j_2)} \cdots h_{w(i_{\ell - 1}, j_{\ell - 1})} \)). Hence, \( d \) is a homogeneous symmetric polynomial of degree \( |\lambda| - (\lambda_i - i + j) \) (since \( d \) is clearly a symmetric polynomial). This proves Claim 1.]

Now, \( \mu \) is a sum of diagonal products; but each such diagonal product is a homogeneous symmetric polynomial of degree \( |\lambda| - (\lambda_i - i + j) \) (by Claim 1). Hence, their sum \( \mu \) is also a homogeneous symmetric polynomial of degree \( |\lambda| - (\lambda_i - i + j) \).

Recall that \( \mu \) is the \((i, j)\)-th minor of the matrix \( A \). Hence, the \((i, j)\)-th cofactor of the matrix \( A \) is \((-1)^{i+j} \mu \) (by Definition 5.9 (b)). Thus, this cofactor is a homogeneous symmetric polynomial of degree \( |\lambda| - (\lambda_i - i + j) \) (since \( \mu \) is a homogeneous symmetric polynomial of degree \( |\lambda| - (\lambda_i - i + j) \)).

But

\[ A = \begin{pmatrix} h_{w(u, v)} \\ \vdots \\ h_{w(\ell, \ell)} \end{pmatrix} \]

\[ = (h_{\lambda_{u} - u + v})_{1 \leq u \leq \ell, 1 \leq v \leq \ell} \]

(21)

We have shown that the \((i, j)\)-th cofactor of the matrix \( A \) is a homogeneous symmetric polynomial of degree \( |\lambda| - (\lambda_i - i + j) \). In view of (21), this rewrites as
follows: The \((i, j)\)-th cofactor of the matrix \((h_{\lambda_u-u+v})_{1 \leq u \leq \ell, 1 \leq v \leq \ell}\) is a homogeneous symmetric polynomial of degree \(|\lambda| - (\lambda_i - i + j)\). This proves Lemma 5.10.

**Lemma 5.11.** Let \(\lambda \in P_k\) be a partition such that \(\lambda \notin P_{k,n}\). Then,

\[ s_\lambda \equiv (\text{some symmetric polynomial of degree } < |\lambda|) \mod I. \]

**Proof of Lemma 5.11 (sketched).** Write the partition \(\lambda\) as \(\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k)\). (This can be done, since \(\lambda \in P_k\).) Note that \(k > 0\) (since otherwise, \(\lambda \in P_{k,n}\), which would contradict \(\lambda \notin P_{k,n}\)).

From \(\lambda \in P_k\) and \(\lambda \notin P_{k,n}\), we conclude that not all parts of the partition \(\lambda\) are \(\leq n - k\). Thus, the first entry \(\lambda_1\) of \(\lambda\) is \(> n - k\) (since \(\lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \lambda_3 \geq \cdots\)). But \(\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k)\). Thus, Proposition 5.7 (a) yields

\[ s_\lambda = \det \left( (h_{\lambda_u-u+v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k} \right) = \sum_{j=1}^{k} h_{\lambda_1-1+j} \cdot C_j, \quad (22) \]

where \(C_j\) denotes the \((1, j)\)-th cofactor of the \(k \times k\)-matrix \((h_{\lambda_u-u+v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}\). (Here, the last equality sign follows from \(19\), applied to \(\ell = k\) and \(R = \mathcal{S}\) and \(A = (h_{\lambda_u-u+v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}\) and \(a_{u,v} = h_{\lambda_u-u+v}\) and \(i = 1\).)

For each \(j \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}\), we have \(\lambda_1 - 1 + j \geq \lambda_1 - 1 + 1 = \lambda_1 > n - k\) and therefore

\[ h_{\lambda_1-1+j} \equiv (\text{some symmetric polynomial of degree } < \lambda_1 - 1 + j) \mod I \quad (23) \]

(by Lemma 5.4 applied to \(i = \lambda_1 - 1 + j\)).

For each \(j \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}\), the polynomial \(C_j\) is the \((1, j)\)-th cofactor of the matrix \((h_{\lambda_u-u+v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}\) (by its definition), and thus is a homogeneous symmetric polynomial of degree \(|\lambda| - (\lambda_1 - 1 + j)\) (by Lemma 5.10 applied to \(\ell = k\) and \(i = 1\)). Hence,

\[ C_j = (\text{some symmetric polynomial of degree } \leq |\lambda| - (\lambda_1 - 1 + j)) \quad (24) \]

for each \(j \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}\).
Therefore, (22) becomes
\[
\sum_{j=1}^{k} h_{\lambda_1-1+j} \cdot C_j \equiv (\text{some symmetric polynomial of degree } < \lambda_1 - 1 + j) \mod I 
\]
(by (23))
\[
= (\text{some symmetric polynomial of degree } |\lambda| - (\lambda_1 - 1 + j)) 
\]
(by (23))
\[
\equiv \sum_{j=1}^{k} (\text{some symmetric polynomial of degree } < \lambda_1 - 1 + j) \cdot (\text{some symmetric polynomial of degree } |\lambda| - (\lambda_1 - 1 + j)) \equiv (\text{some symmetric polynomial of degree } < |\lambda|) \mod I .
\]

This proves Lemma 5.11. □

Recall Definition 5.6.

**Lemma 5.12.** Let \( N \in \mathbb{N} \). Let \( f \in S \) be a symmetric polynomial of degree \(< N \). Then, there exists a family \((c_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_k; |\lambda| < N} \) of elements of \( k \) such that
\[
f = \sum_{\lambda \in P_k; |\lambda| < N} c_\lambda s_\lambda .
\]

**Proof of Lemma 5.12.** For each \( d \in \mathbb{N} \), we let \( S_{\text{deg}=d} \) be the \( d \)-th graded part of the graded \( k \)-module \( S \). This is the \( k \)-submodule of \( S \) consisting of all homogeneous elements of \( S \) of degree \( d \) (including the zero vector 0, which is homogeneous of every degree).

Recall that the family \((s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_k} \) is a graded basis of the graded \( k \)-module \( S \). In other words, for each \( d \in \mathbb{N} \), the family \((s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_k; |\lambda|=d} \) is a basis of the \( k \)-submodule \( S_{\text{deg}=d} \) of \( S \). Hence, for each \( d \in \mathbb{N} \), we have
\[
S_{\text{deg}=d} = \left( \text{the } k \text{-linear span of the family } (s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_k; |\lambda|=d} \right) = \sum_{\lambda \in P_k; |\lambda|=d} k s_\lambda .
\]

(25)

The polynomial \( f \) has degree \(< N \). Hence, we can write \( f \) in the form \( f = \sum_{d=0}^{N-1} f_d \) for some \( f_0, f_1, \ldots, f_{N-1} \in \mathcal{P} \), where each \( f_d \) is a homogeneous polynomial of degree \( d \). Consider these \( f_0, f_1, \ldots, f_{N-1} \). These \( N \) polynomials \( f_0, f_1, \ldots, f_{N-1} \) are the first \( N \) homogeneous components of \( f \), and thus are symmetric (since \( f \) is symmetric); in other words, \( f_0, f_1, \ldots, f_{N-1} \) are elements of \( S \). Thus, for each \( d \in \{0, 1, \ldots, N - 1\} \), the polynomial \( f_d \) is an element of \( S \)
and is homogeneous of degree $d$ (as we already know). In other words, for each $d \in \{0, 1, \ldots, N - 1\}$, we have

$$f_d \in S_{\text{deg}=d}.$$ \hfill (26)

Now,

$$f = \sum_{d=0}^{N-1} f_d \in \sum_{d=0}^{N-1} S_{\text{deg}=d} = \sum_{\lambda \in P_k; |\lambda| = d} \sum_{\lambda \in P_k; |\lambda| = d} k_{\lambda} = \sum_{\lambda \in P_k; |\lambda| < N} k_{\lambda}$$

(here, we have renamed the summation index $\lambda$ as $\kappa$ in the sum). In other words, there exists a family $$(c_\kappa)_{\kappa \in P_k; |\kappa| < N}$$ of elements of $k$ such that $f = \sum_{\kappa \in P_k; |\kappa| < N} c_\kappa s_\kappa$. This proves Lemma 5.12.

\[\square\]

**Lemma 5.13.** For each $\mu \in P_k$, the element $\bar{\mu} \in S/I$ belongs to the $k$-submodule of $S/I$ spanned by the family $$(\bar{\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_k}$$.

**Proof of Lemma 5.13.** Let $M$ be the $k$-submodule of $S/I$ spanned by the family $$(\bar{\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_k}$. We thus must prove that $\bar{\mu} \in M$ for each $\mu \in P_k$.

We shall prove this by strong induction on $|\mu|$. Thus, we fix some $N \in \mathbb{N}$, and we assume (as induction hypothesis) that

$$\bar{\kappa} \in M \quad \text{for each } \kappa \in P_k \text{ satisfying } |\kappa| < N.$$ \hfill (27)

Now, let $\mu \in P_k$ be such that $|\mu| = N$. We then must show that $\bar{\mu} \in M$.

If $\mu \in P_{k,n}$, then this is obvious (since $\bar{\mu}$ then belongs to the family that spans $M$). Thus, for the rest of this proof, we WLOG assume that $\mu \notin P_{k,n}$. Hence, Lemma 5.11 (applied to $\lambda = \mu$) yields

$$s_\mu \equiv (\text{some symmetric polynomial of degree } < |\mu|) \mod I.$$  

In other words, there exists some symmetric polynomial $f \in S$ of degree $< |\mu|$ such that $s_\mu \equiv f \mod I$. Consider this $f$.

The polynomial $f$ is a symmetric polynomial of degree $< |\mu|$. In other words, $f$ is a symmetric polynomial of degree $< N$ (since $|\mu| = N$). Hence, Lemma 5.12 shows that there exists a family $$(c_\kappa)_{\kappa \in P_k; |\kappa| < N}$$ of elements of $k$ such that $f = \sum_{\kappa \in P_k; |\kappa| < N} c_\kappa s_\kappa$. Consider this family. From $f = \sum_{\kappa \in P_k; |\kappa| < N} c_\kappa s_\kappa$, we obtain

$$f = \sum_{\kappa \in P_k; |\kappa| < N} c_\kappa s_\kappa \equiv \sum_{\kappa \in P_k; |\kappa| < N} c_\kappa \bar{\kappa} \in \sum_{\kappa \in P_k; |\kappa| < N} c_\kappa \subseteq M \quad \text{(since } M \text{ is a } k\text{-module}).$$

---

23
But from \( s_\mu \equiv f \mod I \), we obtain \( \overline{s_\mu} = \overline{f} \in M \). This completes our induction step. Thus, we have proven by strong induction that \( \overline{s_\mu} \in M \) for each \( \mu \in P_k \). This proves Lemma \[5.13\].

**Proof of Theorem 2.7 (sketched).** Proposition 2.1 yields that \((x^\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^k; \ a_i < i \text{ for each } i}\) is a spanning set of the \( S \)-module \( \mathcal{P} \).

Recall Definition 5.6. It is well-known that \((s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_k}\) is a basis of the \( k \)-module \( S \). Hence, \((\overline{s_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_k}\) is a spanning set of the \( k \)-module \( S/I \). Thus, \((\overline{s_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}\) is also a spanning set of the \( k \)-module \( S/I \) (because Lemma 5.13 shows that every element of the first spanning set belongs to the span of the second). It remains to prove that this spanning set is also a basis.

In order to do so, we consider the family \((\overline{s_\lambda x^\alpha})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}; \ a \in \mathbb{N}^k; \ a_i < i \text{ for each } i}\) in the \( k \)-module \( \mathcal{P}/I \). This family spans \( \mathcal{P}/I \) (by Lemma 5.2), because the family \((\overline{s_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}\) spans \( S/I \) whereas the family \((x^\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^k; \ a_i < i \text{ for each } i}\) spans \( \mathcal{P} \) over \( S \) (and because \( \mathcal{P} = \mathcal{J} \)). Moreover, this family \((\overline{s_\lambda x^\alpha})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}; \ a \in \mathbb{N}^k; \ a_i < i \text{ for each } i}\) has size

\[
\frac{|P_{k,n}| \cdot \left\{ \alpha \in \mathbb{N}^k \mid a_i < i \text{ for each } i \right\}}{\binom{n}{k}} = \binom{n}{k} \cdot k!
\]

which is exactly the size of the basis \((x^\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^k; \ a_i < n - k + i \text{ for each } i}\) of the \( k \)-module \( \mathcal{P}/I \) (this is a basis by Theorem 2.2). Thus, this family \((\overline{s_\lambda x^\alpha})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}; \ a \in \mathbb{N}^k; \ a_i < i \text{ for each } i}\) must be a basis of the \( k \)-module \( \mathcal{P}/I \) (by Lemma 5.3), and hence is \( k \)-linearly independent. Thus, its subfamily \((\overline{s_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}\) is also \( k \)-linearly independent.

The canonical \( k \)-linear map \( S/I \rightarrow \mathcal{P}/I \) (obtained as a quotient of the inclusion \( S \rightarrow \mathcal{P} \)) is injective (because it sends the spanning set \((\overline{s_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}\) of \( S/I \) to the \( k \)-linearly independent family \((\overline{s_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}\) in \( \mathcal{P}/I \)). Hence, the \( k \)-linear independency of the family \((\overline{s_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}\) in \( \mathcal{P}/I \) yields the \( k \)-linear independency of the family \((\overline{s_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}\) in \( S/I \). Thus, the family \((\overline{s_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}\) in \( S/I \) is a basis of \( S/I \) (since it is \( k \)-linearly independent and spans \( S/I \)). This proves Theorem 2.7. □

6. Symmetry of the multiplicative structure constants

**Convention 6.1.** For the rest of Section 6, we assume that \( a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k \) belong to \( k \).

If \( m \in S \), then the notation \( \overline{m} \) shall always mean the projection of \( m \in S \) onto the quotient \( S/I \) (and not the projection of \( m \in \mathcal{P} \) onto the quotient
Definition 6.2. (a) Let $\omega$ be the partition $(n - k, n - k, \ldots, n - k)$ with $k$ entries equal to $n - k$. (This is the largest partition in $P_{k,n}$.)

(b) Let $I$ be the ideal of $S$ generated by the $k$ differences $\mu$. For each $\mu \in P_{k,n}$, let $\text{coeff}_\mu : S/I \to k$ be the $k$-linear map that sends $s_\mu$ to 1 while sending all other $s_\lambda$ (with $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$) to 0. (This is well-defined by Theorem 2.7. Actually, $(\text{coeff}_\mu)_\mu \in P_{k,n}$ is the dual basis to the basis $(s_\lambda)_\lambda \in P_{k,n}$ of $S/I$.)

(c) If $\lambda$ is any partition and if $p$ is a positive integer, then $\lambda_p$ shall always denote the $p$-th entry of $\lambda$. Thus, $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots)$ for every partition $\lambda$.

(d) For every partition $\nu = (\nu_1, \nu_2, \ldots, \nu_k) \in P_{k,n}$, we let $\nu^\vee$ denote the partition $\omega$ for every partition $\omega$.

We can now make a more substantial claim:

Theorem 6.3. Each $\nu \in P_{k,n}$ and $f \in S/I$ satisfy $\text{coeff}_\omega (s_\nu f) = \text{coeff}_{\nu^\vee} (f)$.

The proof of this theorem requires some preliminary work. We first recall some basic notations from [GriRei20, Chapter 2]. If $\lambda$ and $\mu$ are two partitions, then we say that $\mu \subseteq \lambda$ if and only if each positive integer $p$ satisfies $\mu_p \leq \lambda_p$. A skew partition means a pair $(\lambda, \mu)$ of two partitions satisfying $\mu \subseteq \lambda$; such a pair is denoted by $\lambda / \mu$. We refer to [GriRei20, §2.7] for the definition of a vertical $i$-strip (where $i \in \mathbb{N}$).

Let $\Lambda$ be the ring of symmetric functions in infinitely many indeterminates $x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots$ over $k$. If $f \in \Lambda$ is a symmetric function, then $f(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k)$ is a symmetric polynomial in $S$; the map

$$\Lambda \to S, \quad f \mapsto f(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k)$$

is a surjective $k$-algebra homomorphism. We shall use boldfaced notations for symmetric functions in $\Lambda$ in order to distinguish them from symmetric polynomials in $S$. In particular:

- For any $i \in \mathbb{Z}$, we let $h_i$ be the $i$-th complete homogeneous symmetric function in $\Lambda$. (This is called $h_i$ in [GriRei20, Definition 2.2.1].)

- For any $i \in \mathbb{Z}$, we let $e_i$ be the $i$-th elementary symmetric function in $\Lambda$. (This is called $e_i$ in [GriRei20, Definition 2.2.1].)

- For any partition $\lambda$, we let $e_\lambda$ be the corresponding elementary symmetric function in $\Lambda$. (This is called $e_\lambda$ in [GriRei20, Definition 2.2.1].)

- For any partition $\lambda$, we let $s_\lambda$ be the corresponding Schur function in $\Lambda$. (This is called $s_\lambda$ in [GriRei20, Definition 2.2.1].)
For any partitions $\lambda$ and $\mu$, we let $s_{\lambda/\mu}$ be the corresponding skew Schur function in $\Lambda$. (This is called $s_{\lambda/\mu}$ in [GriRei20 §2.3]. Note that $s_{\lambda/\mu} = 0$ unless $\mu \subseteq \lambda$.)

Also, we shall use the skewing operators as defined (e.g.) in [GriRei20 §2.8]. We recall their main properties:

- For each $f \in \Lambda$, the skewing operator $f^\perp$ is a $k$-linear map $\Lambda \to \Lambda$. It depends $k$-linearly on $f$ (that is, we have $(\alpha f + \beta g)^\perp = \alpha f^\perp + \beta g^\perp$ for any $\alpha, \beta \in k$ and $f, g \in \Lambda$).

- For any partitions $\lambda$ and $\mu$, we have $(s_\mu)^\perp (s_\lambda) = s_{\lambda/\mu}$. (28)

  (This is [GriRei20 (2.8.2)].)

- For any $f, g \in \Lambda$, we have $(fg)^\perp = g^\perp \circ f^\perp$. (29)

  (This is [GriRei20 Proposition 2.8.2(ii)], applied to $A = \Lambda$.)

- We have $1^\perp = \text{id}$.

For each partition $\lambda$, let $\lambda^t$ denote the conjugate partition of $\lambda$; see [GriRei20] for its definition.

Recall the second Jacobi-Trudi identity ([GriRei20, (2.4.17)]):

**Proposition 6.4.** Let $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_\ell)$ and $\mu = (\mu_1, \mu_2, \ldots, \mu_\ell)$ be two partitions. Then,

$$s_{\lambda^t/\mu^t} = \det \left( \left( e_{\lambda_i - \mu_j - i + j} \right)_{1 \leq i \leq \ell, 1 \leq j \leq \ell} \right).$$

**Corollary 6.5.** Let $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_\ell)$ be a partition. Then,

$$s_{\lambda^t} = \det \left( \left( e_{\lambda_i - i + j} \right)_{1 \leq i \leq \ell, 1 \leq j \leq \ell} \right).$$

**Proof of Corollary 6.5** This follows from Proposition 6.4 applied to $\mu = \emptyset$ (since $\emptyset^t = \emptyset$ and thus $s_{\lambda^t/\emptyset} = s_{\lambda^t} = s_{\lambda^t}$).}

We also recall one of the Pieri rules ([GriRei20 (2.7.2)]):
**Proposition 6.6.** Let $\lambda$ be a partition, and let $i \in \mathbb{N}$. Then,

$$s_\lambda e_i = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \mu / \lambda \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_\mu.$$ 

From this, we can easily derive the following:

**Corollary 6.7.** Let $\lambda$ be a partition, and let $i \in \mathbb{N}$. Then,

$$(e_i)\perp s_\lambda = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \lambda / \mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_\mu.$$ 

Corollary 6.7 is also proven in [GriRei20, (2.8.4)].

The next proposition is the claim of [GriRei20, Exercise 2.9.1(b)]:

**Proposition 6.8.** Let $\lambda$ be a partition. Let $m \in \mathbb{Z}$ be such that $m \geq \lambda_1$. Then,

$$\sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} (-1)^i h_{m+i} (e_i)\perp s_\lambda = s_{(m, \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots)}.$$ 

We shall use this to derive the following corollary:

**Corollary 6.9.** Let $\lambda$ be a partition with at most $k$ parts. Let $\lambda'$ be the partition $(\lambda_2, \lambda_3, \lambda_4, \ldots)$. Then,

$$s_\lambda = \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} (-1)^i h_{\lambda_1+i} \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \lambda / \mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_\mu.$$ 

**Proof of Corollary 6.9.** The partition $\lambda'$ is obtained from $\lambda$ by removing the first part. Hence, this partition $\lambda'$ has at most $k - 1$ parts (since $\lambda$ has at most $k$ parts). Thus, if $i \in \mathbb{N}$ satisfies $i \geq k$, then

there exists no partition $\mu$ such that $\lambda / \mu$ is a vertical $i$-strip. \hfill (30)

We have $\lambda' = (\lambda_2, \lambda_3, \lambda_4, \ldots)$, so that $(\lambda_2, \lambda_3, \lambda_4, \ldots) = \lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots)$. Hence, $(\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \lambda_4, \ldots) = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots)$. Also, clearly, $\lambda_1 \geq \lambda_1$ (since $\lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2 = \lambda_1$). Hence, Proposition 6.8 (applied to $\lambda$ and $\lambda_1$ instead of $\lambda$ and $m$) yields

$$\sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} (-1)^i h_{\lambda_1+i} (e_i)\perp s_{\lambda'} = s_{(\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots)} = s_\lambda$$
(since $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \lambda_4, \ldots) = \lambda$). Therefore,

$$s_\lambda = \sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} (-1)^i h_{\lambda_1+i} = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition}} \sum_{\lambda/\mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} (-1)^i h_{\lambda_1+i} s_\mu$$

$$= \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} (-1)^i h_{\lambda_1+i} s_\mu + \sum_{i \geq k} (-1)^i h_{\lambda_1+i} s_\mu$$

$$= \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} (-1)^i h_{\lambda_1+i} s_\mu.$$ (by Corollary 6.7)

This proves Corollary 6.9.$\square$

**Convention 6.10.** We WLOG assume that $k > 0$ for the rest of Section 6 (since otherwise, Theorem 6.3 is trivial).

Next, we define a filtration on the $k$-module $S/I$:

**Definition 6.11.** For each $p \in \mathbb{Z}$, we let $Q_p$ denote the $k$-submodule of $S/I$ spanned by the $s_\lambda$ with $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$ satisfying $\lambda_k \leq p$.

Thus, $0 = Q_{-1} \subseteq Q_0 \subseteq Q_1 \subseteq Q_2 \subseteq \cdots$. Theorem 2.7 shows that the $k$-module $S/I$ is free with basis $(s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$; hence, $S/I = Q_{n-k}$ (since each $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$ satisfies $\lambda_k \leq n-k$).

Note that $(Q_0, Q_1, Q_2, \ldots)$ is a filtration of the $k$-module $S/I$, but not (in general) of the $k$-algebra $S/I$.

**Lemma 6.12.** We have $\operatorname{coeff}_\omega (Q_{n-k-1}) = 0$.

**Proof of Lemma 6.12.** The map $\operatorname{coeff}_\omega$ is $k$-linear; thus, it suffices to prove that $\operatorname{coeff}_\omega (s_\lambda) = 0$ for each $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$ satisfying $\lambda_k \leq n - k - 1$ (because the $k$-module $Q_{n-k-1}$ is spanned by the $s_\lambda$ with $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$ satisfying $\lambda_k \leq n - k - 1$). So let us fix some $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$ satisfying $\lambda_k \leq n - k - 1$. We must then prove that $\operatorname{coeff}_\omega (s_\lambda) = 0$.

We have $\lambda_k \leq n - k - 1 < n - k = \omega_k$. Thus, $\lambda_k \neq \omega_k$, so that $\lambda \neq \omega$.

The definition of the map $\operatorname{coeff}_\omega$ yields $\operatorname{coeff}_\omega (s_\lambda) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \lambda = \omega; \\ 0, & \text{if } \lambda \neq \omega \end{cases}$ (since $\lambda \neq \omega$). This completes our proof of Lemma 6.12.$\square$
Lemma 6.13. Let $\lambda$ be a partition with at most $k$ parts. Assume that $\lambda_1 = n - k + 1$. Let $\overline{\lambda}$ be the partition $(\lambda_2, \lambda_3, \lambda_4, \ldots)$. Then,

$$s_{\overline{\lambda}} = \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} (-1)^i a_{1+i} \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \overline{\lambda}/\mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_\mu.$$ 

Proof of Lemma 6.13. Corollary 6.9 yields

$$s_{\lambda} = \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} (-1)^i h_{\lambda_1+i} \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \overline{\lambda}/\mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_\mu.$$ 

This is an identity in $\Lambda$. Evaluating both of its sides at the $k$ variables $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k$, we obtain

$$s_{\lambda} = \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} (-1)^i h_{\lambda_1+i} \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \overline{\lambda}/\mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_\mu = \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} (-1)^i h_{n-k+1+i} \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \overline{\lambda}/\mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_\mu \equiv a_{1+i} \mod I.$$

Projecting both sides of this equality from $S$ to $S/I$, we obtain

$$s_{\overline{\lambda}} = \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} (-1)^i a_{1+i} \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \overline{\lambda}/\mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_\mu = \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} (-1)^i a_{1+i} \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \overline{\lambda}/\mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_\mu.$$ 

This proves Lemma 6.13.

Lemma 6.14. Let $\lambda$ be a partition with at most $k$ parts. Assume that $\lambda_1 = n - k + 1$. Then, $s_{\overline{\lambda}} \in Q_0$.

Proof of Lemma 6.14. We shall prove Lemma 6.14 by strong induction on $|\lambda|$. Thus, we fix some $N \in \mathbb{N}$, and we assume (as induction hypothesis) that Lemma 6.14 is already proven whenever $|\lambda| < N$. We now must prove Lemma 6.14 in the case when $|\lambda| = N$. 

29
So let \( \lambda \) be as in Lemma \ref{lm:6.14} and assume that \(|\lambda| = N\). Let \( \overline{\lambda} \) be the partition \((\lambda_2, \lambda_3, \lambda_4, \ldots)\). Then, Lemma \ref{lm:6.13} yields

\[
\overline{s}_\lambda = \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} (-1)^i a_{1+i} \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition;} \atop \overline{\lambda}/\mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} \overline{s}_\mu. \tag{31}
\]

But if \( \mu \) is a partition such that \( \overline{\lambda}/\mu \) is a vertical \( i \)-strip, then

\[
\overline{s}_\mu \in Q_0. \tag{32}
\]

[Proof of (32): The partition \( \lambda \) has at most \( k \) parts; thus, the partition \( \overline{\lambda} \) has at most \( k - 1 \) parts. Now, let \( \mu \) be a partition such that \( \overline{\lambda}/\mu \) is a vertical \( i \)-strip. Then, \( \mu \subseteq \overline{\lambda} \), so that \( \mu \) has at most \( k - 1 \) parts (since \( \overline{\lambda} \) has at most \( k - 1 \) parts). Thus, \( \mu_k = 0 \leq 0 \). Also, \( \mu \) has at most \( k \) parts (since \( \mu \) has at most \( k - 1 \) parts). If \( \mu_1 \leq n - k \), then this yields that \( \mu \in P_{k,n} \) and therefore \( \overline{s}_\mu \in Q_0 \) (since \( \mu \in P_{k,n} \) and \( \mu_k \leq 0 \)). Thus, (32) is proven if \( \mu_1 \leq n - k \). Hence, for the rest of this proof, we WLOG assume that we don’t have \( \mu_1 \leq n - k \). Hence, \( \mu_1 > n - k \). But \( \mu \subseteq \overline{\lambda} \), so that \( \mu_1 \leq \overline{\lambda}_1 = \lambda_2 \leq \lambda_1 = n - k + 1 \). Combining this with \( \mu_1 > n - k \), we obtain \( \mu_1 = n - k + 1 \). Also, \( \mu \subseteq \overline{\lambda} \), so that

\[
|\mu| \leq |\overline{\lambda}| = |\lambda| - \underbrace{\lambda_1}_{=n-k+1>0} < |\lambda| = N.
\]

Hence, we can apply Lemma \ref{lm:6.14} to \( \mu \) instead of \( \lambda \) (by the induction hypothesis). We thus obtain \( \overline{s}_\mu \in Q_0 \). This completes the proof of (32).

Now, (31) becomes

\[
\overline{s}_\lambda = \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} (-1)^i a_{1+i} \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition;} \atop \overline{\lambda}/\mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} \overline{s}_\mu \quad \text{in } Q_0. \tag{by (32)}
\]

Thus, we have proven Lemma \ref{lm:6.14} for our \( \lambda \). This completes the induction step; thus, Lemma \ref{lm:6.14} is proven.

\begin{lemma}
\label{lm:6.15}
Let \( i \in \mathbb{N} \) and \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \). Then,

\[
\overline{s}_i \overline{s}_\lambda \equiv \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \atop \mu/\lambda \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} \overline{s}_\mu \mod Q_0.
\]
\end{lemma}

\begin{proof}[Proof of Lemma \ref{lm:6.15}]
If \( \mu \) is a partition such that \( \mu/\lambda \) is a vertical \( i \)-strip and \( \mu \notin P_{k,n} \), then

\[
\overline{s}_\mu \equiv 0 \mod Q_0. \tag{33}
\]
\end{proof}
[Proof of (33): Let \( \mu \) be a partition such that \( \frac{\mu}{\lambda} \) is a vertical \( i \)-strip and \( \mu \notin P_{k,n} \). We must prove (33).

If the partition \( \mu \) has more than \( k \) parts, then (33) easily follows\(^{10} \). Hence, for the rest of this proof, we WLOG assume that the partition \( \mu \) has at most \( k \) parts.

Since \( \frac{\mu}{\lambda} \) is a vertical strip, we have \( \mu_1 \leq \lambda_1 + 1 \). But \( \lambda_1 \leq n - k \) (since \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \)). If \( \mu_1 = n - k + 1 \), then (33) easily follows\(^{11} \). Hence, for the rest of this proof, we WLOG assume that \( \mu_1 \neq n - k + 1 \). Combining this with \( \mu_1 \leq \lambda_1 + 1 \leq n - k + 1 \), we obtain \( \mu_1 < n - k + 1 \), so that \( \mu_1 \leq n - k \).

Hence, \( \mu \in P_{k,n} \) (since \( \mu \) has at most \( k \) parts). This contradicts \( \mu \notin P_{k,n} \). Thus, \( \bar{s}_\mu \equiv 0 \mod Q_0 \) (because ex falso quodlibet). Hence, (33) is proven.\(^{L} \)

Proposition 6.6 yields

\[
\sum_{\mu: \text{a partition; } \mu/\lambda \text{ a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_\mu = \sum_{\mu: \text{a partition; } \mu/\lambda \text{ a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_\mu.
\]

This is an identity in \( \Lambda \). Evaluating both of its sides at the \( k \) variables \( x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k \), we obtain

\[
\sum_{\mu: \text{a partition; } \mu/\lambda \text{ a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_\mu = \sum_{\mu: \text{a partition; } \mu/\lambda \text{ a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_\mu.
\]

Projecting both sides of this equality from \( S \) to \( S/I \), we obtain

\[
\bar{s}_{\lambda} e_i = \sum_{\mu: \text{a partition; } \mu/\lambda \text{ a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_\mu = \sum_{\mu: \text{a partition; } \mu/\lambda \text{ a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_\mu \equiv 0 \mod Q_0.
\]

Thus, \( e_i \bar{s}_\lambda = \bar{s}_\lambda e_i \equiv \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}: \mu/\lambda \text{ a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_\mu \mod Q_0 \). This proves Lemma 6.15 \(\Box\)

**Lemma 6.16.** Let \( i \in \mathbb{N} \) and \( p \in \mathbb{Z} \). Then, \( \bar{e}_i Q_p \subseteq \bar{Q}_{p+1} \).

*Proof of Lemma 6.16.* Due to the definition of \( Q_p \), it suffices that every \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \) satisfying \( \lambda_k \leq p \) satisfies \( \bar{e}_i \bar{s}_\lambda \subseteq Q_{p+1} \). So let us fix \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \) satisfying \( \lambda_k \leq p \). We must prove that \( \bar{e}_i \bar{s}_\lambda \subseteq Q_{p+1} \).

\(^{10} \text{Proof. Assume that the partition } \mu \text{ has more than } k \text{ parts. Thus, } (3) \text{ (applied to } \mu \text{ instead of } \lambda \text{) yields } \bar{s}_\mu = 0. \text{ Thus, } \bar{e}_i \bar{s}_\lambda = 0 \equiv 0 \mod Q_0. \text{ Thus, } (33) \text{ holds.}

\(^{11} \text{Proof. Assume that } \mu_1 = n - k + 1. \text{ Then, Lemma 6.14 (applied to } \mu \text{ instead of } \lambda \text{) yields } \bar{s}_\mu \subseteq Q_0. \text{ Hence, } \bar{s}_\mu \equiv 0 \mod Q_0. \text{ Thus, } (33) \text{ holds.}
If \( \mu \in P_{k,n} \) is such that \( \mu / \lambda \) is a vertical \( i \)-strip, then
\[
\overline{s}_\mu \equiv 0 \mod Q_{p+1}.
\] (34)

[Proof of (34): Let \( \mu \in P_{k,n} \) be such that \( \mu / \lambda \) is a vertical \( i \)-strip. We must prove (34).
Since \( \mu / \lambda \) is a vertical strip, we have \( \mu_k \leq \lambda_k \leq \cdots \leq p \leq p+1 \).
From \( \mu \in P_{k,n} \) and \( \mu_k \leq p+1 \), we obtain \( \overline{s}_\mu \in Q_{p+1} \). In other words, \( \overline{s}_\mu \equiv 0 \mod Q_{p+1} \). Thus, (34) is proven.]

Lemma 6.15 yields
\[
\overline{e}_i s_\lambda \equiv \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n} ; \mu / \lambda \text{ is a vertical } i \text{-strip}} \overline{s}_\mu \mod Q_0.
\]
Hence,
\[
\overline{e}_i s_\lambda - \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n} ; \mu / \lambda \text{ is a vertical } i \text{-strip}} \overline{s}_\mu \in Q_0 \subseteq Q_{p+1}.
\]
Thus,
\[
\overline{e}_i s_\lambda \equiv \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n} ; \mu / \lambda \text{ is a vertical } i \text{-strip}} \overline{s}_\mu \equiv 0 \mod Q_{p+1}.
\]
(by (34))

In other words, \( \overline{e}_i s_\lambda \in Q_{p+1} \). This completes our proof of Lemma 6.16. \( \square \)

The next fact that we use from the theory of symmetric functions are some basic properties of the Littlewood-Richardson coefficients. For any partitions \( \lambda, \mu, \nu \), we let \( c^\lambda_{\mu,\nu} \) be the Littlewood-Richardson coefficient as defined in \cite[Definition 2.5.8]{GrRei20}. Then, we have the following fact (part of \cite[Remark 2.5.9]{GrRei20}):

**Proposition 6.17.** Let \( \lambda \) and \( \mu \) be two partitions.

(a) We have
\[
s_{\lambda / \mu} = \sum_{\nu \text{ is a partition}} c^\lambda_{\mu,\nu} s_\nu.
\]

(b) If \( \nu \) is a partition, then \( c^\lambda_{\mu,\nu} = 0 \) unless \( \nu \subseteq \lambda \).

(c) If \( \nu \) is a partition, then \( c^\lambda_{\mu,\nu} = 0 \) unless \( |\mu| + |\nu| = |\lambda| \).

Next, let \( Z \) be the \( k \)-submodule of \( \Lambda \) spanned by the \( s_\lambda \) with \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \). Then, \( (s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}} \) is a basis of the \( k \)-module \( Z \) (since \( (s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}} \) is a partition is a basis of the \( k \)-module \( \Lambda \)). We thus can define a \( k \)-linear map \( \delta : Z \to S/I \) by setting
\[
\delta (s_\lambda) = \overline{s}_\lambda^\nu \quad \text{for every } \lambda \in P_{k,n}.
\]
Notice that a partition \( \lambda \) satisfies \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \) if and only if \( \lambda \subseteq \omega \).
Lemma 6.18. We have \( f^\perp (Z) \subseteq Z \) for each \( f \in \Lambda \).

Proof of Lemma 6.18 Since \( f^\perp \) depends \( k \)-linearly on \( f \), it suffices to check that \( (s_\mu)^\perp (Z) \subseteq Z \) for each partition \( \mu \). So let us fix a partition \( \mu \); we then must prove that \( (s_\mu)^\perp (Z) \subseteq Z \).

Recall that \( Z \) is the \( k \)-module spanned by the \( s_\lambda \) with \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \). Hence, in order to prove that \( (s_\mu)^\perp (Z) \subseteq Z \), it suffices to check that \( (s_\mu)^\perp (s_\lambda) \in Z \) for each \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \). So let us fix \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \); we must then prove that \( (s_\mu)^\perp (s_\lambda) \in Z \).

From (28), we obtain

\[
(s_\mu)^\perp (s_\lambda) = s_{\lambda/\mu} = \sum_{\nu \text{ is a partition}} c_{\mu,\nu}^{\lambda} s_\nu \quad \text{(by Proposition 6.17 (a))}
\]

\[
= \sum_{\nu \text{ is a partition}; \nu \subseteq \lambda} c_{\mu,\nu}^{\lambda} s_\nu + \sum_{\nu \text{ is a partition}; \not\nu \subseteq \lambda} c_{\mu,\nu}^{\lambda} s_\nu = 0 \quad \text{(by Proposition 6.17 (b))}
\]

\[
= \sum_{\nu \text{ is a partition}; \nu \subseteq \lambda} c_{\mu,\nu}^{\lambda} s_\nu \in Z. \quad \text{(because } \nu \subseteq \lambda \text{ and } \lambda \in P_{k,n} \text{ lead to } \nu \in P_{k,n})
\]

This completes our proof of Lemma 6.18.

Lemma 6.19. Let \( i \in Z \) and \( f \in Z \). Then,

\[
\delta \left( (e_i)^\perp f \right) \equiv \overline{e_i} \delta (f) \mod Q_0.
\]

(Note that \( \delta \left( (e_i)^\perp f \right) \) is well-defined, since Lemma 6.18 yields \( (e_i)^\perp f \in Z \).)

Proof of Lemma 6.19 Both sides of the claim are \( k \)-linear in \( f \). Hence, we can WLOG assume that \( f = s_\lambda \) for some \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \) (since \( (s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}} \) is a basis of the \( k \)-module \( Z \)). Assume this, and consider this \( \lambda \).

It is easy to see that if \( \mu \in P_{k,n} \), then we have the following equivalence of statements:

\[
(\lambda/\mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}) \iff (\lambda^\vee/\mu^\vee \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}).
\]

(Indeed, the skew Young diagram of \( \mu^\vee/\lambda^\vee \) is obtained from the skew Young diagram of \( \lambda/\mu \) by a rotation by 180°.)

We must prove that \( \delta \left( (e_i)^\perp f \right) \equiv \overline{e_i} \delta (f) \mod Q_0 \). If \( i < 0 \), then this is obvious (because if \( i < 0 \), then both \( e_i \) and \( e_i \) equal 0, and therefore both sides of the congruence \( \delta \left( (e_i)^\perp f \right) \equiv \overline{e_i} \delta (f) \mod Q_0 \) are equal to 0). Hence, for the rest of
this proof, we WLOG assume that we don’t have $i < 0$. Thus, $i \geq 0$, so that $i \in \mathbb{N}$.

From $f = s_{\lambda}$, we obtain

\[
\left(e_i\right)^{\perp} f = \left(e_i\right)^{\perp} s_{\lambda} = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \lambda/\mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_{\mu} \quad \text{(by Corollary 6.7)}
\]

\[
= \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \mu/\alpha \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_{\mu}
\]

(because if $\mu$ is a partition such that $\lambda/\mu$ is a vertical $i$-strip, then $\mu \in P_{k,n}$ (since $\mu \subseteq \lambda$ and $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$)). Applying the map $\delta$ to both sides of this equality, we find

\[
\delta \left(\left(e_i\right)^{\perp} f\right) = \delta \left(\sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \lambda/\mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_{\mu}\right) = \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \lambda/\mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} \delta (s_{\mu}) \quad \text{(by the definition of $\delta$)}
\]

\[
= \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \mu/\alpha \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} \overline{s_{\mu}} \quad \text{(by (35))}
\]

\[
= \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \mu/\alpha \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} \overline{s_{\mu}} \quad \text{(by (36))}
\]

(here, we have substituted $\mu$ for $\mu/\alpha$ in the sum, since the map $P_{k,n} \rightarrow P_{k,n}, \mu \mapsto \mu/\alpha$ is a bijection).

On the other hand, from $f = s_{\lambda}$, we obtain $\delta (f) = \delta (s_{\lambda}) = \overline{s_{\lambda}}$ (by the definition of $\delta$) and thus

\[
\overline{e_i} \delta (f) = \overline{e_i} \overline{s_{\lambda}} \equiv \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \mu/\alpha \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} \overline{s_{\mu}} \mod Q_0 \quad \text{(by Lemma 6.15, applied to } \lambda/\alpha \text{ instead of } \lambda).
\]

Comparing this with (36), we obtain $\delta \left(\left(e_i\right)^{\perp} f\right) \equiv \overline{e_i} \delta (f) \mod Q_0$. This proves Lemma 6.19.

**Lemma 6.20.** Let $p \in \mathbb{N}$. Let $i_1, i_2, \ldots, i_p \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $f \in \mathbb{Z}$. Then,

\[
\delta \left(\left(e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_p}\right)^{\perp} f\right) \equiv \overline{e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_p}} \delta (f) \mod Q_{p-1}.
\]

**Proof of Lemma 6.20.** We proceed by induction on $p$.

The induction base (the case $p = 0$) is obvious (since $1^{\perp} = \text{id}$ and thus $1^{\perp} f = f$).
**Induction step:** Let \( q \in \mathbb{N} \). Assume (as the induction hypothesis) that Lemma 6.20 holds for \( p = q \). We must now prove that Lemma 6.20 holds for \( p = q + 1 \). In other words, we must prove that every \( i_1, i_2, \ldots, i_{q+1} \in \mathbb{Z} \) and \( f \in \mathbb{Z} \) satisfy

\[
\delta \left( \left( e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_{q+1}} \right)^\perp f \right) \equiv e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_q} \delta \left( f \right) \mod Q_q. \tag{37}
\]

So let \( i_1, i_2, \ldots, i_{q+1} \in \mathbb{Z} \) and \( f \in \mathbb{Z} \). We must prove (37). Lemma 6.16 (applied to \( i_{q+1} \) and \( q - 1 \) instead of \( i \) and \( p \)) yields \( e_{i_{q+1}} Q_{q-1} \subseteq Q_q \).

The induction hypothesis yields

\[
\delta \left( \left( e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_q} \right)^\perp f \right) \equiv e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_q} \delta \left( f \right) \mod Q_{q-1}.
\]

Multiplying both sides of this congruence by \( e_{i_{q+1}} \), we obtain

\[
e_{i_{q+1}} \delta \left( \left( e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_q} \right)^\perp f \right) \equiv e_{i_{q+1}} e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_q} \delta \left( f \right) \mod Q_q \tag{38}
\]

(since \( e_{i_{q+1}} Q_{q-1} \subseteq Q_q \)).

Applying Lemma 6.18 to \( f = e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_q} \), we obtain \( \left( e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_q} \right)^\perp \left( Z \right) \subseteq Z \).

Hence, \( \left( e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_q} \right)^\perp f \in Z \) (since \( f \in Z \)).

But (29) (applied to \( f = e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_q} \) and \( g = e_{i_{q+1}} \)) yields

\[
\left( e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_{q+1}} \right)^\perp = \left( e_{i_{q+1}} \right)^\perp \circ \left( e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_q} \right)^\perp,
\]

Hence,

\[
\left( e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_{q+1}} \right)^\perp f = \left( e_{i_{q+1}} \right)^\perp \circ \left( e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_q} \right)^\perp f = \left( e_{i_{q+1}} \right)^\perp \left( e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_q} \right)^\perp f.
\]

Applying the map \( \delta \) to both sides of this equality, we find

\[
\delta \left( \left( e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_{q+1}} \right)^\perp f \right) = \delta \left( e_{i_{q+1}} \right)^\perp \left( e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_q} \right)^\perp f \equiv e_{i_{q+1}} e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_q} \delta \left( f \right) \mod Q_0 \tag{38}
\]

(by Lemma 6.19, applied to \( i_{q+1} \) and \( \left( e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_q} \right)^\perp f \) instead of \( i \) and \( f \)). Since \( Q_0 \subseteq Q_q \), this yields

\[
\delta \left( \left( e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_{q+1}} \right)^\perp f \right) \equiv e_{i_{q+1}} e_{i_1} e_{i_2} \cdots e_{i_q} \delta \left( f \right) \mod Q_q.
\]
Thus, (37) is proven. This completes the induction step. Thus, Lemma 6.20 is proven.

**Lemma 6.21.** Let $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$ and $f \in \mathbb{Z}$. Then,

$$\delta \left( (s_{\lambda})^\perp f \right) \equiv \overline{s_{\lambda}} \delta (f) \mod Q_{n-k-1}.$$ 

**Proof of Lemma 6.21.** Let $\ell = n - k$. From $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$, we have $\lambda_1 \leq n - k = \ell$.

Consider the conjugate partition $\lambda^t$ of $\lambda$. Then, $\lambda^t$ has exactly $\lambda_1$ parts. Thus, $\lambda^t$ has $\leq \ell$ parts (since $\lambda_1 \leq \ell$). Therefore, $\lambda^t = (\lambda^t_1, (\lambda^t)_2, \ldots, (\lambda^t)_\ell)$. Hence, Corollary 6.5 (applied to $\lambda^t$ instead of $\lambda$) yields

$$s_{(\lambda^t)_t} = \det \left( \left( e_{(\lambda^t)_t}^{\ell-1+j-1} \right)_{1 \leq i \leq \ell, 1 \leq j \leq \ell} \right).$$ 

(39)

In view of $(\lambda^t)_t = \lambda$, this rewrites as

$$s_{\lambda} = \det \left( \left( e_{(\lambda^t)_t}^{\ell-1+j-1} \right)_{1 \leq i \leq \ell, 1 \leq j \leq \ell} \right) = \sum_{\sigma \in S_\ell} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^{\ell} e_{(\lambda^t)_t}^{i-1+\sigma(i)}$$

(39)

(where $S_\ell$ denotes the symmetric group of the set $\{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\}$, and where $(-1)^\sigma$ denotes the sign of a permutation $\sigma \in S_\ell$). Hence,

$$(s_{\lambda})^\perp f = \left( \sum_{\sigma \in S_\ell} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^{\ell} e_{(\lambda^t)_t}^{i-1+\sigma(i)} \right)^\perp f = \sum_{\sigma \in S_\ell} (-1)^\sigma \left( \prod_{i=1}^{\ell} e_{(\lambda^t)_t}^{i-1+\sigma(i)} \right)^\perp f.$$ 

Applying the map $\delta$ to this equality, we obtain

$$\delta \left( (s_{\lambda})^\perp f \right) = \delta \left( \sum_{\sigma \in S_\ell} (-1)^\sigma \left( \prod_{i=1}^{\ell} e_{(\lambda^t)_t}^{i-1+\sigma(i)} \right)^\perp f \right)$$

$$= \sum_{\sigma \in S_\ell} (-1)^\sigma \delta \left( \left( \prod_{i=1}^{\ell} e_{(\lambda^t)_t}^{i-1+\sigma(i)} \right)^\perp f \right)$$

(since $\delta$ is $k$-linear)

$$\equiv \prod_{i=1}^{\ell} e_{(\lambda^t)_t}^{i-1+\sigma(i)} \delta (f) \mod Q_{\ell-1}$$

(by Lemma 6.20 applied to $p=\ell$ and $i_j=(\lambda^t)_t-j+\sigma(j)$)

$$\equiv \sum_{\sigma \in S_\ell} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^{\ell} e_{(\lambda^t)_t}^{i-1+\sigma(i)} \delta (f) \mod Q_{\ell-1}. \quad (40)$$
On the other hand, (39) is an identity in $\Lambda$. Evaluating both of its sides at the $k$ variables $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k$, we obtain

$$s_\lambda = \sum_{\sigma \in S_\ell} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^\ell e_{(\lambda')_i-i+\sigma(i)}.$$

Hence,

$$\bar{s}_\lambda \delta(f) = \sum_{\sigma \in S_\ell} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^\ell e_{(\lambda')_i-i+\sigma(i)} \delta(f) = \sum_{\sigma \in S_\ell} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^\ell e_{(\lambda')_i-i+\sigma(i)} \delta(f).$$

Thus, (40) rewrites as

$$\delta\left(\left(s_\lambda\right)\perp f\right) = \sum_{\sigma \in S_\ell} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^\ell e_{(\lambda')_i-i+\sigma(i)} \delta(f) = \sum_{\sigma \in S_\ell} (\sigma) \prod_{i=1}^\ell e_{(\lambda')_i-i+\sigma(i)} \delta(f) = \sum_{\sigma \in S_\ell} (\sigma) \delta(f) \equiv 0 \mod Q_{n-k-1}.$$

In other words, $\delta\left(\left(s_\lambda\right)\perp f\right) \equiv 0 \mod Q_{n-k-1}$. This proves Lemma 6.21.

**Lemma 6.22.** Let $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$ and $\mu \in P_{k,n}$. Then,

$$\text{coeff}_\omega (s_\lambda s_\mu) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \lambda = \mu^\vee; \\ 0, & \text{if } \lambda \neq \mu^\vee. \end{cases}$$

**Proof of Lemma 6.22.** From $\mu \in P_{k,n}$, we obtain $\mu^\vee \in P_{k,n}$. Hence, $s_{\mu^\vee} \in \mathbb{Z}$ and

$$\delta\left(s_{\mu^\vee}\right) = s_{(\mu^\vee)^\vee} \quad \text{(by the definition of } \delta)$$

$$= s_{\mu} \quad \text{(since } (\mu^\vee)^\vee = \mu).$$

Also, Lemma 6.21 (applied to $f = s_{\mu^\vee}$) yields

$$\delta\left(\left(s_\lambda\right)\perp s_{\mu^\vee}\right) \equiv \bar{s}_\lambda \delta\left(s_{\mu^\vee}\right) \mod Q_{n-k-1}$$

(since $s_{\mu^\vee} \in \mathbb{Z}$). In other words, $\delta\left(\left(s_\lambda\right)\perp s_{\mu^\vee}\right) - \bar{s}_\lambda \delta\left(s_{\mu^\vee}\right) \in Q_{n-k-1}$. Hence,

$$\text{coeff}_\omega \left(\delta\left(\left(s_\lambda\right)\perp s_{\mu^\vee}\right) - \bar{s}_\lambda \delta\left(s_{\mu^\vee}\right)\right) \in \text{coeff}_\omega \left(Q_{n-k-1}\right) = 0$$

(by Lemma 6.12). Thus,

$$\text{coeff}_\omega \left(\delta\left(\left(s_\lambda\right)\perp s_{\mu^\vee}\right)\right) = \text{coeff}_\omega \left(\bar{s}_\lambda \delta\left(s_{\mu^\vee}\right)\right) = \text{coeff}_\omega \left(s_\lambda s_\mu\right)$$

$$= \text{coeff}_\omega \left(\bar{s}_\lambda s_\mu\right). \quad (41)$$
Applying (28) to $\lambda$ and $\mu^\vee$ instead of $\mu$ and $\lambda$, we obtain $(s_\lambda)^\perp s_{\mu^\vee} = s_{\mu^\vee/\lambda}$. Thus, (41) rewrites as

$$\text{coeff}_\omega \left( \delta \left( s_{\mu^\vee/\lambda} \right) \right) = \text{coeff}_\omega \left( \overline{s_\lambda s_\mu} \right).$$  

(42)

We are in one of the following three cases:

Case 1: We have $\lambda = \mu^\vee$.

Case 2: We have $\lambda \subseteq \mu^\vee$ but not $\lambda = \mu^\vee$.

Case 3: We don’t have $\lambda \subseteq \mu^\vee$.

Let us first consider Case 1. In this case, we have $\lambda = \mu^\vee$. Thus, $s_{\mu^\vee/\lambda} = s_{\mu^\vee/\mu^\vee} = 1 = s_\emptyset$ and thus

$$\delta \left( s_{\mu^\vee/\lambda} \right) = \delta \left( s_\emptyset \right) = \overline{s_\emptyset} \quad \text{(by the definition of $\delta$)}$$

$$= \overline{s_\omega} \quad \text{(since $\emptyset^\vee = \omega$)}.$$

Therefore, $\text{coeff}_\omega \left( \delta \left( s_{\mu^\vee/\lambda} \right) \right) = \text{coeff}_\omega \left( \overline{s_\omega} \right) = 1 \quad \text{(by the definition of coeff}_\omega).$

Comparing this with

$$\begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \lambda = \mu^\vee; \\ 0, & \text{if } \lambda \neq \mu^\vee \end{cases} \quad \text{(since } \lambda = \mu^\vee),$$

we obtain $\text{coeff}_\omega \left( \overline{s_\lambda s_\mu} \right) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \lambda = \mu^\vee; \\ 0, & \text{if } \lambda \neq \mu^\vee \end{cases}$. Hence, Lemma 6.22 is proven in Case 1.

Let us next consider Case 2. In this case, we have $\lambda \subseteq \mu^\vee$ but not $\lambda = \mu^\vee$. Hence, $|\lambda| < |\mu^\vee|$ and $\lambda \neq \mu^\vee$.

Now, every partition $\nu$ satisfying $|\lambda| + |\nu| = |\mu^\vee|$ and $\nu \subseteq \mu^\vee$ must satisfy

$$\nu \in P_{k,n} \text{ and coeff}_\omega \left( \delta \left( s_\nu \right) \right) = 0.$$  

(43)

[Proof of (43): Let $\nu$ be a partition satisfying $|\lambda| + |\nu| = |\mu^\vee|$ and $\nu \subseteq \mu^\vee$. We must prove (43).]

First of all, from $\nu \subseteq \mu^\vee$ and $\mu^\vee \in P_{k,n}$, we obtain $\nu \in P_{k,n}$. It thus remains to show that coeff$_\omega \left( \delta \left( s_\nu \right) \right) = 0$.

The definition of $\delta$ yields $\delta \left( s_\nu \right) = \overline{s_\nu}$ (since $\nu \in P_{k,n}$). But $|\lambda| + |\nu| = |\mu^\vee|$ yields $|\nu| = |\mu^\vee| - |\lambda| > 0$ (since $|\lambda| < |\mu^\vee|$).

But every partition $\kappa \in P_{k,n}$ satisfies $|\kappa^\vee| = k (n-k) - |\kappa| = |\omega| - |\kappa|$. Applying this to $\kappa = \nu$, we obtain

$$|\nu^\vee| = |\omega| - |\nu| > 0.$$ 

Hence, $|\nu^\vee| \neq |\omega|$, so that $\nu^\vee \neq \omega$. 

38
But the definition of coeff\(_{\omega}\) yields coeff\(_{\omega}\) (\(s^{\nu}/s^{\omega}\)) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \nu^{\vee} = \omega; \\ 0, & \text{if } \nu^{\vee} \neq \omega \end{cases} = 0 \text{ (since } \nu^{\vee} \neq \omega)\). In view of \(\delta(s_{\nu}) = s^{\nu}/s^{\omega}\), this rewrites as coeff\(_{\omega}\) (\(\delta(s_{\nu})\)) = 0. This completes the proof of (43).

Proposition 6.17(a) (applied to \(\mu^{\vee}\) and \(\lambda\) instead of \(\lambda\) and \(\mu\)) yields
\[
\sum_{\nu} c^{\mu^{\vee}}_{\lambda^{\vee}, \nu} s_{\nu} = \sum_{\nu} c^{\mu^{\vee}}_{\lambda^{\vee}, \nu} s_{\nu} + \sum_{\nu \not\subseteq \mu^{\vee}; \not\subseteq \mu^{\vee}; |\lambda| + |\nu| = |\mu^{\vee}|} c^{\mu^{\vee}}_{\lambda^{\vee}, \nu} s_{\nu} = 0 \\
\text{(by Proposition 6.17(b), applied to } \mu^{\vee}\text{ and } \lambda\text{ instead of } \lambda\text{ and } \mu) \\
= \sum_{\nu \not\subseteq \mu^{\vee}; \not\subseteq \mu^{\vee}; |\lambda| + |\nu| = |\mu^{\vee}|} c^{\mu^{\vee}}_{\lambda^{\vee}, \nu} s_{\nu}.
\]

Applying the map \(\delta\) to this equality, we find
\[
\delta\left(s^{\mu^{\vee}/\lambda}\right) = \delta\left(\sum_{\nu \not\subseteq \mu^{\vee}; \not\subseteq \mu^{\vee}; |\lambda| + |\nu| = |\mu^{\vee}|} c^{\mu^{\vee}}_{\lambda^{\vee}, \nu} s_{\nu}\right) = \sum_{\nu \not\subseteq \mu^{\vee}; \not\subseteq \mu^{\vee}; |\lambda| + |\nu| = |\mu^{\vee}|} c^{\mu^{\vee}}_{\lambda^{\vee}, \nu} \delta(s_{\nu}) \quad \text{(since every partition } \nu \text{ satisfying } \nu \subseteq \mu^{\vee} \text{ and } |\lambda| + |\nu| = |\mu^{\vee}| \text{ must satisfy } \nu \in P_{k,\mu}\text{ by (43)) and thus } s_{\nu} \in \mathbb{Z})
\]

Applying the map coeff\(_{\omega}\) to this equality, we find
\[
\text{coeff}\(_{\omega}\)\left(\delta\left(s^{\mu^{\vee}/\lambda}\right)\right) = \text{coeff}\(_{\omega}\)\left(\sum_{\nu \not\subseteq \mu^{\vee}; \not\subseteq \mu^{\vee}; |\lambda| + |\nu| = |\mu^{\vee}|} c^{\mu^{\vee}}_{\lambda^{\vee}, \nu} \delta(s_{\nu})\right) = \sum_{\nu \not\subseteq \mu^{\vee}; \not\subseteq \mu^{\vee}; |\lambda| + |\nu| = |\mu^{\vee}|} c^{\mu^{\vee}}_{\lambda^{\vee}, \nu} \text{coeff}\(_{\omega}\)\left(\delta(s_{\nu})\right) = 0. \quad \text{(by (43))}
\]
Comparing this with
\[
\begin{cases}
1, & \text{if } \lambda = \mu^\vee; \\
0, & \text{if } \lambda \neq \mu^\vee \quad (\text{since } \lambda \neq \mu^\vee),
\end{cases}
\]
we obtain \( \text{coeff}_\omega \left( \overline{s_\lambda s_\mu} \right) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \lambda = \mu^\vee; \\
0, & \text{if } \lambda \neq \mu^\vee. \end{cases} \) Hence, Lemma \ref{lem622} is proven in Case 2.

Let us finally consider Case 3. In this case, we don’t have \( \lambda \subseteq \mu^\vee \). Hence, we don’t have \( \lambda = \mu^\vee \) either. Thus, \( \lambda \neq \mu^\vee \).

Also, \( s_\mu^\vee / \lambda = 0 \) (since we don’t have \( \lambda \subseteq \mu^\vee \)). Thus,
\[
\text{coeff}_\omega \left( \delta \left( \overline{s_\mu^\vee / \lambda} \right) \right) = \text{coeff}_\omega \left( \delta \left( 0 \right) \right) = 0.
\]
Comparing this with
\[
\begin{cases}
1, & \text{if } \lambda = \mu^\vee; \\
0, & \text{if } \lambda \neq \mu^\vee \quad (\text{since } \lambda \neq \mu^\vee),
\end{cases}
\]
we obtain \( \text{coeff}_\omega \left( \overline{s_\lambda s_\mu} \right) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \lambda = \mu^\vee; \\
0, & \text{if } \lambda \neq \mu^\vee. \end{cases} \) Hence, Lemma \ref{lem622} is proven in Case 3.

We have now proven Lemma \ref{lem622} in all three Cases 1, 2 and 3. Thus, Lemma \ref{lem622} always holds.

**Proof of Theorem \ref{thm63}** Write \( f \in S/I \) in the form \( f = \sum_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}} \alpha_\lambda s_\lambda \) with \( \alpha_\lambda \in k \). (This is possible, since \( (\overline{s_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}} \) is a basis of the \( k \)-module \( S/I \).) Then, the definition of \( \text{coeff}_\nu^\vee \) yields \( \text{coeff}_\nu^\vee (f) = \alpha_\nu^\vee \).

On the other hand,
\[
\text{coeff}_\omega \left( \overline{s_\nu f} \right) = \text{coeff}_\omega \left( \overline{s_\nu \sum_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}} \alpha_\lambda s_\lambda} \right) = \sum_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}} \alpha_\lambda \text{coeff}_\omega \left( \overline{s_\lambda s_\nu} \right)
\]
\[
= \sum_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}} \alpha_\lambda \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \lambda = \nu^\vee; \\
0, & \text{if } \lambda \neq \nu^\vee \quad (\text{by Lemma } \ref{lem622} \text{ applied to } \mu=\nu)
\end{cases}
\]
\[
= \sum_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}} \alpha_\lambda \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \lambda = \nu^\vee; \\
0, & \text{if } \lambda \neq \nu^\vee = \alpha_\nu^\vee
\end{cases}
\]

\[ \vdots \]
(since $\nu^\vee \in P_{k,n}$). Comparing this with $\text{coeff}_{\nu^\vee}(f) = \alpha_{\nu^\vee}$, we obtain $\text{coeff}_{\omega}(s_{\nu^\vee} f) = \text{coeff}_{\nu^\vee}(f)$. This proves Theorem 6.3.

**Definition 6.23.** For any three partitions $\alpha, \beta, \gamma \in P_{k,n}$, let $g_{\alpha,\beta,\gamma} = \text{coeff}_{\gamma^\vee}(s_{\alpha}s_{\beta}s_{\gamma}) \in k$.

These scalars $g_{\alpha,\beta,\gamma}$ are thus the structure constants of the $k$-algebra $S/I$ in the basis $(s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ (although slightly reindexed). As a consequence of Theorem 6.3, we obtain the following $S_3$-property of these structure constants:

**Corollary 6.24.** We have

$$g_{\alpha,\beta,\gamma} = g_{\alpha,\gamma,\beta} = g_{\beta,\alpha,\gamma} = g_{\beta,\gamma,\alpha} = g_{\gamma,\alpha,\beta} = g_{\gamma,\beta,\alpha} = \text{coeff}_{\omega}(s_{\alpha}s_{\beta}s_{\gamma})$$

for any $\alpha, \beta, \gamma \in P_{k,n}$.

**Proof of Corollary 6.24.** Let $\alpha, \beta, \gamma \in P_{k,n}$. It clearly suffices to prove $g_{\alpha,\beta,\gamma} = \text{coeff}_{\omega}(s_{\alpha}s_{\beta}s_{\gamma})$, since the rest of the claim then follows by analogy.

Theorem 6.3 (applied to $\nu = \gamma$ and $f = s_{\alpha}s_{\beta}$) yields

$$\text{coeff}_{\omega}(s_{\gamma}s_{\alpha}s_{\beta}) = \text{coeff}_{\gamma^\vee}(s_{\alpha}s_{\beta}) = g_{\alpha,\beta,\gamma}$$

(by the definition of $g_{\alpha,\beta,\gamma}$). Thus, $g_{\alpha,\beta,\gamma} = \text{coeff}_{\omega}(\underbrace{s_{\gamma}s_{\alpha}s_{\beta}}_{j \text{ times}}) = \text{coeff}_{\omega}(\underbrace{s_{\alpha}s_{\beta}s_{\gamma}}_{j \text{ times}})$. This completes our proof of Corollary 6.24.

7. Complete homogeneous symmetric polynomials

In this section, we shall further explore the projections $\overline{h_i}$ of complete homogeneous symmetric polynomials $h_i$ onto $S/I$. This exploration will culminate in a second proof of Theorem 6.3.

**Convention 7.1.** Convention 6.1 remains in place for the whole Section 7.

We shall also use all the notations introduced in Section 6.

If $j \in \mathbb{N}$, then the expression “$1^j$” in a tuple stands for $j$ consecutive entries equal to 1 (that is, $1,1,\ldots,1$). Thus, $(m,1^j) = \begin{pmatrix} m,1,1,\ldots,1 \end{pmatrix}_{j \text{ times}}$ for any $m \in \mathbb{N}$ and $j \in \mathbb{N}$.
7.1. A reduction formula for $h_{n+m}$

The following result helps us reduce complete homogeneous symmetric polynomials $h_{n+m}$ modulo the ideal $I$:

**Proposition 7.2.** Let $m$ be a positive integer. Then,

$$h_{n+m} \equiv \sum_{j=0}^{k-1} (-1)^j a_{k-j} s_{(m,1^j)} \mod I.$$  

We shall derive Proposition 7.2 from the following identity between symmetric functions in $\Lambda$:

**Proposition 7.3.** Let $m$ be a positive integer. Then,

$$h_{n+m} = \sum_{j=0}^{n} (-1)^j h_{n-j} s_{(m,1^j)}.$$  

**Proof of Proposition 7.3.** Let $j \in \mathbb{N}$.  

In [GriRei20, Exercise 2.9.14(b)], it is shown that

$$\sum_{i=0}^{b} (-1)^i h_{a+i} e_{b-i} = s_{(a+1,b)}$$  

(44)

for all $a, b \in \mathbb{N}$. Applying this equality to $a = m - 1$ and $b = j$, we obtain

$$\sum_{i=0}^{j} (-1)^i h_{m+i} e_{j-i} = s_{(m,1^j)}.$$  

(45)

Now, forget that we fixed $j$. We thus have proven (45) for each $j \in \mathbb{N}$. Also, for any $N \in \mathbb{N}$, we have

$$\sum_{(i,j) \in \mathbb{N}^2; i+j=N} (-1)^i e_i h_j = \delta_{0,N}$$

(where $\delta_{0,N}$ is a Kronecker delta). (This is [GriRei20 (2.4.4)], with $n$ renamed as $N$.) Thus, for any $N \in \mathbb{N}$, we have

$$\delta_{0,N} = \sum_{(i,j) \in \mathbb{N}^2; i+j=N} (-1)^i e_i h_j = \sum_{(i,j) \in \mathbb{N}^2; i+j=N} (-1)^j h_j e_i$$

$$= \sum_{i=0}^{N} (-1)^i h_{N-i} e_i \quad \text{(here, we have substituted $(i, N-i)$ for $(i,j)$ in the sum)}$$

$$= \sum_{j=0}^{N} (-1)^j h_{N-j} e_j \quad \text{(here, we have renamed the summation index $i$ as $j$)}.$$
Thus, for any $N \in \mathbb{N}$, we have

$$\sum_{j=0}^{N} (-1)^j h_{N-j}e_j = \delta_{0,N}. \quad (46)$$

For each $i \in \{0, 1, \ldots, n\}$, we have

$$\sum_{j=i}^{n} (-1)^{j-i} h_{n-j}e_{j-i}$$

$$= \sum_{j=0}^{n-i} (-1)^j h_{n-i-j}e_j \quad \text{(here, we have substituted $j$ for $j-i$ in the sum)}$$

$$= \delta_{0,n-i} \quad \text{(by (46), applied to $n-i$ instead of $N$)}$$

$$= \delta_{i,n}. \quad (47)$$

Now,

$$\sum_{j=0}^{n} (-1)^j h_{n-j}s_{(m,1)}^{(m,1)}$$

$$= \sum_{j=0}^{n} (-1)^j h_{n-j}e_{j-i}$$

$$= \sum_{j=0}^{n} \sum_{i=0}^{j} (-1)^i h_{m+i}e_{j-i}$$

$$= \sum_{i=0}^{n} \sum_{j=i}^{n-i} (-1)^j h_{n-j}e_{j-i}$$

$$= \sum_{i=0}^{n} \sum_{j=i}^{n} (-1)^{j-i} h_{n-j}e_{j-i}$$

$$= \delta_{i,n} \quad \text{(by (47))}$$

This proves Proposition 7.3.

Proof of Proposition 7.2 For each integer $j \geq k$, we have

$$s_{(m,1)}^{(m,1)} = 0. \quad (48)$$

[Proof of (48): Let $j \geq k$ be an integer. Then, the partition $(m,1^j)$ has $j+1$ parts; thus, this partition has more than $k$ parts (since $j+1 > j \geq k$). Thus, (3) (applied to $\lambda = (m,1^j)$) yields $s_{(m,1^j)} = 0$. This proves (48).]
Proposition 7.3 yields

\[ h_{n+m} = \sum_{j=0}^{n} (-1)^j h_{n-j} s_{(m,1')}. \]

This is an identity in \( \Lambda \). Evaluating both of its sides at the \( k \) variables \( x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k \), we obtain

\[
\begin{align*}
  h_{n+m} &= \sum_{j=0}^{k-1} (-1)^j h_{n-j} s_{(m,1')} + \sum_{j=k}^{n} (-1)^j h_{n-j} s_{(m,1')} \\
  &= \sum_{j=0}^{k-1} (-1)^j h_{n-j} s_{(m,1')} + \sum_{j=0}^{n} (-1)^j a_{k-j} s_{(m,1')} \mod I.
\end{align*}
\]

(by (48))

This proves Proposition 7.2.

7.2. Lemmas on free modules

Next, we state a basic lemma from commutative algebra:

| Lemma 7.4. | Let \( r \in \mathbb{N} \). Let \( X \) and \( Y \) be two free \( k \)-modules of rank \( r \). Then, every surjective \( k \)-linear map from \( X \) to \( Y \) is a \( k \)-module isomorphism. |

Proof of Lemma 7.4. Let \( f : X \to Y \) be a surjective \( k \)-linear map from \( X \) to \( Y \). We must prove that \( f \) is a \( k \)-module isomorphism.

There is clearly a \( k \)-module isomorphism \( j : Y \to X \) (since \( X \) and \( Y \) are free \( k \)-modules of the same rank). Consider this \( j \). Then, the composition \( j \circ f \) is surjective (since \( j \) and \( f \) are surjective), and thus is a surjective endomorphism of the finitely generated \( k \)-module \( X \). But [GriRei20, Exercise 2.5.18(a)] shows that any surjective endomorphism of a finitely generated \( k \)-module is a \( k \)-module isomorphism. Hence, we conclude that \( j \circ f \) is a \( k \)-module isomorphism. Thus, \( f \) is a \( k \)-module isomorphism (since \( j \) is a \( k \)-module isomorphism). This proves Lemma 7.4.

| Lemma 7.5. | Let \( Z \) be a \( k \)-module. Let \( U, X \) and \( Y \) be \( k \)-submodules of \( Z \) such that \( Z = X \oplus Y \) and \( X \subseteq U \). Let \( r \in \mathbb{N} \). Assume that the \( k \)-module \( X \) has a basis with \( r \) elements, whereas the \( k \)-module \( U \) can be spanned by \( r \) elements. Then, \( X = U \). |

---

44
Proof of Lemma 7.5. Let $\pi : Z \to X$ be the canonical projection from the direct sum $Z = X \oplus Y$ onto its addend $X$. Let $i : X \to U$ be the canonical injection. Then, the composition

$$X \xrightarrow{i} U \xrightarrow{\pi|_U} X$$

is just $\text{id}_X$ (since $\pi|_X = \text{id}_X$). Hence, the map $\pi|_U$ is surjective.

We assumed that the $k$-module $U$ can be spanned by $r$ elements. Thus, there is a surjective $k$-module homomorphism $u : k^r \to U$. Consider this $u$.

Both $k$-modules $k^r$ and $X$ are free of rank $r$ (since $X$ has a basis with $r$ elements). The composition

$$k^r \xrightarrow{u} U \xrightarrow{\pi|_U} X$$

is surjective (since both $u$ and $\pi|_U$ are surjective), and thus is a $k$-module isomorphism (by Lemma 7.4, applied to $k^r$ and $X$ instead of $X$ and $Y$). Hence, it is injective. Thus, $u$ is injective. Since $u$ is also surjective, we thus conclude that $u$ is bijective, and therefore a $k$-module isomorphism. Since both $u$ and the composition $k^r \xrightarrow{u} U \xrightarrow{\pi|_U} X$ are $k$-module isomorphisms, we now conclude that the map $\pi|_U$ is a $k$-module isomorphism. Hence, it has an inverse. But this inverse must be $i$ (since the composition $X \xrightarrow{i} U \xrightarrow{\pi|_U} X$ is $\text{id}_X$). Thus, $i$ is a $k$-module isomorphism, too. Thus, in particular, $i$ is surjective. Therefore, $U = i(X) = X$. This proves Lemma 7.5. \qed

### 7.3. The symmetric polynomials $h_v$

**Definition 7.6.** Let $\ell \in \mathbb{N}$, and let $v = (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_\ell) \in \mathbb{Z}^\ell$ be any $\ell$-tuple of integers. Then, we define the symmetric polynomial $h_v \in S$ as follows:

$$h_v = h_{v_1} h_{v_2} \cdots h_{v_\ell}.$$

Note that the polynomial $h_v$ does not change if we permute the entries of the $\ell$-tuple $v$. If an $\ell$-tuple $v$ of integers contains any negative entries, then $h_v = 0$ (since $h_i = 0$ for any $i < 0$). Also, if an $\ell$-tuple $v$ of integers contains any entry $= 0$, then we can remove this entry without changing $h_v$ (since $h_0 = 1$).

### 7.4. The submodules $L_p$ and $H_p$ of $S/I$

It is time to define two further filtrations of the $k$-module $S/I$ (in addition to the filtration $(Q_p)_{p \in \mathbb{Z}}$ from Definition 6.11):

**Definition 7.7.** (a) If $\lambda$ is a partition, then $\ell(\lambda)$ shall denote the length of $\lambda$; this is defined as the number of positive entries of $\lambda$. Note that $\ell(\lambda) \leq k$ for each $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$.
(b) For each $p \in \mathbb{Z}$, we let $L_p$ denote the $k$-submodule of $S/I$ spanned by the $\overline{s_\lambda}$ with $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$ satisfying $\ell(\lambda) \leq p$.

(c) For each $p \in \mathbb{Z}$, we let $H_p$ denote the $k$-submodule of $S/I$ spanned by the $\overline{h_\lambda}$ with $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$ satisfying $\ell(\lambda) \leq p$.

The only partition $\lambda$ satisfying $\ell(\lambda) \leq 0$ is the empty partition $\emptyset = ()$; it belongs to $P_{k,n}$ and satisfies $\overline{s_\lambda} = 1$. Hence, $L_0$ is the $k$-submodule of $S/I$ spanned by 1. Similarly, $H_0$ is the same $k$-submodule.

Also, $L_k$ is the $k$-submodule of $S/I$ spanned by all $\overline{s_\lambda}$ with $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$ (because each $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$ satisfies $\ell(\lambda) \leq k$). But the latter $k$-submodule is $S/I$ itself (by Theorem 2.7). Thus, we conclude that $L_k$ is $S/I$ itself. In other words,

$$L_k = S/I.$$ 

Clearly, $L_0 \subseteq L_1 \subseteq L_2 \subseteq \cdots$ and $H_0 \subseteq H_1 \subseteq H_2 \subseteq \cdots$. We shall soon see that the families $(L_p)_{p \in \mathbb{Z}}$ and $(H_p)_{p \in \mathbb{Z}}$ are identical (Proposition 7.11) and are filtrations of the $k$-algebra $S/I$ (Proposition 7.15). First let us show a basic fact:

Lemma 7.8. Let $p \in \mathbb{N}$ be such that $p \leq k$. Let $v = (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_p) \in \mathbb{Z}^p$. Assume that $v_i \leq n$ for each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, p\}$. Then, $\overline{h_v} \in H_p$.

(The condition “$p \leq k$” can be removed from this lemma, but we aren’t yet at the point where this is easy to see. We will show this in Proposition 7.14 below.)

Proof of Lemma 7.8 We WLOG assume that $v_1 \geq v_2 \geq \cdots \geq v_p$ (since otherwise, we can just permute the entries of $v$ to achieve this). Let $j$ be the number of $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, p\}$ satisfying $v_i > n - k$. Then,

$$v_1 \geq v_2 \geq \cdots \geq v_j > n - k \geq v_{j+1} \geq v_{j+2} \geq \cdots \geq v_p.$$ 

We WLOG assume that all of the $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_p$ are nonnegative (since otherwise, we have $h_v = 0$ and thus $\overline{h_v} = 0 \in H_p$).

Now,

$$\overline{h_v} \in k \quad \text{for each } i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, j\}. \quad (49)$$

[Proof of (49): Let $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, j\}$. Then, $v_i > n - k$ (since $v_1 \geq v_2 \geq \cdots \geq v_j > n - k$), but also $v_i \leq n$ (by the assumptions of Lemma 7.8). Thus, $n - k < v_i \leq n$, so that $v_i \in \{n - k + 1, n - k + 2, \ldots, n\}$ and thus $v_i - (n - k) \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$. Hence, $15$ (applied to $v_i - (n - k)$ instead of $j$) yields $h_v \equiv a_{v_i - (n - k)} \mod I$. Hence, $h_{v_i} = \overline{a_{v_i - (n - k)}} \in k$. This proves (49).]

Furthermore, $(v_{j+1}, v_{j+2}, \ldots, v_p)$ is a partition (since $v_{j+1} \geq v_{j+2} \geq \cdots \geq v_p$ and since all of the $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_p$ are nonnegative) with at most $k$ entries (indeed, its number of entries is $\leq p - j \leq p \leq k$), and all of its entries are $\leq n - k$ (since $n - k \geq v_{j+1} \geq v_{j+2} \geq \cdots \geq v_p$). Hence, $(v_{j+1}, v_{j+2}, \ldots, v_p)$ belongs to $P_{k,n}$.
From \((v_{j+1}, v_{j+2}, \ldots, v_p) \in P_{k,n}\) and \(\ell \left( v_{j+1}, v_{j+2}, \ldots, v_p \right) \leq p - j \leq p\), we obtain \(\overline{h_{(v_{j+1}, v_{j+2}, \ldots, v_p)}} \in H_p\) (by the definition of \(H_p\)).

Now, the definition of \(\overline{h_v}\) yields \(\overline{h_v} = \overline{h_{v_1} h_{v_2} \cdots h_{v_p}}\), so that

\[
\overline{h_v} = \overline{h_{v_1} h_{v_2} \cdots h_{v_p}} = \overline{h_{v_1} h_{v_2} \cdots h_{v_p}} = \left( \overline{h_{v_1} h_{v_2} \cdots h_{v_j}} \right) \left( \overline{h_{v_{j+1}} h_{v_{j+2}} \cdots h_{v_p}} \right)
\]

(by [49])

\[
= \overline{h_{v_1} h_{v_2} \cdots h_{v_p}} = \overline{h_{(v_{j+1}, v_{j+2}, \ldots, v_p)}} \in H_p
\]

\(\in kH_p \subseteq H_p\).

This proves Lemma 7.8.

\[\square\]

**Lemma 7.9.** Let \(k \in \mathbb{Z}\). Then, the family \((\overline{s_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}; \ell(\lambda) \leq p}\) is a basis of the \(k\)-module \(L_p\).

**Proof of Lemma 7.9.** Theorem 2.7 yields that \((\overline{s_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}\) is a basis of the \(k\)-module \(S/1\). Hence, this family \((\overline{s_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,p}; \ell(\lambda) \leq p}\) is \(k\)-linearly independent. Thus, its subfamily \((\overline{s_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}; \ell(\lambda) \leq p}\) is \(k\)-linearly independent as well. Moreover, this subfamily \((\overline{s_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}; \ell(\lambda) \leq p}\) spans the \(k\)-module \(L_p\) (by the definition of \(L_p\)). Hence, this subfamily \((\overline{s_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}; \ell(\lambda) \leq p}\) is a basis of the \(k\)-module \(L_p\). This proves Lemma 7.9.

\[\square\]

**Lemma 7.10.** Let \(p \in \{0, 1, \ldots, k\}\). Then, \(L_p = H_p\).

(This lemma holds more generally for all \(p \in \mathbb{Z}\), as we shall see in Lemma 7.11 below.)

**Proof of Lemma 7.10.** Let \(\lambda \in P_{k,n}\) be such that \(\ell(\lambda) \leq p\). We shall show that \(\overline{s_\lambda} \in H_p\).

Indeed, let \(S_p\) denote the group of permutations of \(\{1, 2, \ldots, p\}\). For each \(\sigma \in S_p\), let \((-1)^\sigma\) denote the sign of \(\sigma\).

For each \(\sigma \in S_p\), we have

\[
\prod_{i=1}^{p} h_{\lambda_i - i + \sigma(i)} \in H_p.
\]

(50)

[Proof of (50): Let \(\sigma \in S_p\). Then, each \(i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, p\}\) satisfies

\[
\frac{\lambda_i}{(since \lambda \in P_{k,n})} - i + \sigma(i) \leq n - k + 0 + k = n.
\]

Thus, Lemma 7.8 (applied to \((\lambda_1 - 1 + \sigma(1), \lambda_2 - 2 + \sigma(2), \ldots, \lambda_p - p + \sigma(p))\) and \(\lambda_i - i + \sigma(i)\) instead of \(v\) and \(v_i\)) yields

\[
\overline{h_{(\lambda_1 - 1 + \sigma(1), \lambda_2 - 2 + \sigma(2), \ldots, \lambda_p - p + \sigma(p))}} \in H_p
\]

\(\in kH_p \subseteq H_p\).

47
(since \( p \leq k \)). In view of

\[
\prod_{i=1}^{p} h_{\lambda_i - i + \sigma(i)}
\]

this rewrites as

\[
\prod_{i=1}^{p} h_{\lambda_i - i + \sigma(i)} \in H_p.
\]

Thus, (50) is proven.]

We have \( \ell(\lambda) \leq p \) and thus \( \lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_p) \). Hence, Proposition 5.7 (b) yields

\[
s_\lambda = \det \left( (h_{\lambda_i - u + v})_{1 \leq u \leq p, 1 \leq v \leq p} \right) = \sum_{\sigma \in S_p} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^{p} h_{\lambda_i - i + \sigma(i)}
\]

(by the definition of a determinant). Projecting both sides of this equality onto \( S/I \), we obtain

\[
\sigma_s^\lambda = \sum_{\sigma \in S_p} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^{p} h_{\lambda_i - i + \sigma(i)} = \sum_{\sigma \in S_p} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^{p} h_{\lambda_i - i + \sigma(i)} \in H_p.
\]

Now, forget that we fixed \( \lambda \). We thus have proven that

\[
\sigma_s^\lambda \in H_p \quad \text{for each } \lambda \in P_{k,n} \text{ satisfying } \ell(\lambda) \leq p.
\]

Therefore, \( L_p \subseteq H_p \) (since \( L_p \) is the \( k \)-submodule of \( S/I \) spanned by the \( \sigma_s^\lambda \) with \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \) satisfying \( \ell(\lambda) \leq p \)).

Lemma 7.9 yields that the family \( \{\sigma_s^\lambda\}_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}; \ell(\lambda) \leq p} \) is a basis of the \( k \)-module \( L_p \).

Now, let \( L'_p \) be the \( k \)-submodule of \( S/I \) spanned by the \( \sigma_s^\lambda \) with \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \) satisfying \( \ell(\lambda) > p \). Recall (from Theorem 2.7) that \( \{\sigma_s^\lambda\}_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}} \) is a basis of the \( k \)-module \( S/I \). Hence, \( S/I = L_p \oplus L'_p \) (since each \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \) satisfies either \( \ell(\lambda) \leq p \) or \( \ell(\lambda) > p \) but not both). Let \( r \) be the number of all \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \) satisfying \( \ell(\lambda) \leq p \). Then, the \( k \)-module \( H_p \) can be spanned by \( r \) elements (namely, by the \( h_{\lambda_i} \) with \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \) satisfying \( \ell(\lambda) \leq p \)), whereas the \( k \)-module \( L_p \) has a basis with \( r \) elements (namely, the family \( \{\sigma_s^\lambda\}_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}; \ell(\lambda) \leq p} \)). Thus, Lemma 7.5 (applied to \( Z = S/I, X = L_p, Y = L'_p \) and \( U = H_p \)) yields \( L_p = H_p \). This proves Lemma 7.10.

| Proposition 7.11. Let \( p \in \mathbb{Z} \). Then, \( L_p = H_p \). |

\[\text{Proof of Proposition 7.11} \] If \( p \) is negative, then both \( L_p \) and \( H_p \) equal 0 (since there exists no \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \) satisfying \( \ell(\lambda) \leq p \) in this case). Thus, if \( p \) is negative, then
Let $p = H_p$ is obviously true. Hence, for the rest of this proof, we WLOG assume that $p$ is not negative. Thus, $p \in \mathbb{N}$.

If $p \in \{0, 1, \ldots, k\}$, then $L_p = H_p$ follows from Lemma 7.10. Hence, for the rest of this proof, we WLOG assume that $p \notin \{0, 1, \ldots, k\}$. Thus, $p > k$ (since $p \in \mathbb{N}$). Hence, $k < p$, so that $H_k \subseteq H_p$ (since $H_0 \subseteq H_1 \subseteq H_2 \subseteq \cdots$). But Lemma 7.10 (applied to $k$ instead of $p$) yields $L_k = H_k$.

But recall that $L_k = S/I$. Thus, $S/I = L_k = H_k \subseteq H_p$. Thus, $H_p \supseteq S/I \supseteq L_p$.

On the other hand, $k < p$ and thus $L_k \subseteq L_p$ (since $L_0 \subseteq L_1 \subseteq L_2 \subseteq \cdots$). Hence, $L_p \supseteq L_k = S/I \supseteq H_p$. Combining this with $H_p \supseteq L_p$, we obtain $L_p = H_p$. This proves Proposition 7.14.

Corollary 7.12. Let $p \in \mathbb{Z}$. Then, the family $(h_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}; \ell(\lambda) \leq p}$ is a basis of the $k$-module $L_p$.

Proof of Corollary 7.12. Lemma 7.9 yields that the family $\left(\overline{\ell(\lambda)}\right)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}; \ell(\lambda) \leq p}$ is a basis of the $k$-module $L_p$. On the other hand, the family $(h_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}; \ell(\lambda) \leq p}$ spans the $k$-module $H_p$ (by the definition of $H_p$). In other words, the family $(h_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}; \ell(\lambda) \leq p}$ spans the $k$-module $L_p$ (since Proposition 7.11 yields $L_p = H_p$).

Since $|\{\lambda \in P_{k,n} \mid \ell(\lambda) \leq p\}| = |\{\lambda \in P_{k,n} \mid \ell(\lambda) \leq p\}|$, we can therefore apply Lemma 5.3 to $L_p$, $(h_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}; \ell(\lambda) \leq p}$ and $(h_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}; \ell(\lambda) \leq p}$ instead of $M_s (b_s)_{s \in S}$ and $(a_u)_{u \in U}$. We thus conclude that $(h_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}; \ell(\lambda) \leq p}$ is a basis of the $k$-module $L_p$. This proves Corollary 7.12.

Theorem 7.13. The family $(\overline{h_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ is a basis of the $k$-module $S/I$.

Proof of Theorem 7.13. Corollary 7.12 (applied to $p = k$) shows that the family $(h_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}; \ell(\lambda) \leq k}$ is a basis of the $k$-module $L_k$. In view of $(h_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}; \ell(\lambda) \leq k} = (h_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ (since each $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$ satisfies $\ell(\lambda) \leq k$) and $L_k = S/I$, this rewrites as follows: The family $(\overline{h_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ is a basis of the $k$-module $S/I$. This proves Theorem 7.13.

Proposition 7.14. Let $p \in \mathbb{N}$. Let $\nu = (\nu_1, \nu_2, \ldots, \nu_p) \in \mathbb{Z}^p$. Assume that $\nu_i \leq n$ for each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, p\}$. Then, $\overline{h_\nu} \in H_p$.

Proof of Proposition 7.14. If $p \leq k$, then this follows from Lemma 7.8. Thus, for the rest of this proof, we WLOG assume that $p > k$. Hence, $k < p$, so that $H_k \subseteq H_p$ (since $H_0 \subseteq H_1 \subseteq H_2 \subseteq \cdots$). But Proposition 7.11 (applied to $k$ instead of $p$) yields $H_k = L_k = S/I$. Now, $\overline{h_\nu} \in S/I = H_k \subseteq H_p$. This proves Proposition 7.14.

49
We recall that the $k$-submodules of a given $k$-algebra $A$ form a monoid under multiplication: The product $XY$ of two $k$-submodules $X$ and $Y$ of $A$ is defined as the $k$-linear span of all products $xy$ with $x \in X$ and $y \in Y$. The neutral element of this monoid is $k \cdot 1_A$. We shall specifically use this monoid in the case when $A = S/I$.

**Proposition 7.15.** The family $(L_p)_{p \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a filtration of the $k$-algebra $S/I$; that is, we have

$$L_0 \subseteq L_1 \subseteq L_2 \subseteq \cdots, \quad \bigcup_{p \in \mathbb{N}} L_p = S/I,$$

$$1 \in L_0, \quad \text{and} \quad L_a L_b \subseteq L_{a+b} \quad \text{for every } a, b \in \mathbb{N}. \quad (51)$$

**Proof of Proposition 7.15** We already know that $L_0 \subseteq L_1 \subseteq L_2 \subseteq \cdots$. Also, $1 \in L_0$ (since $L_0$ is the $k$-submodule of $S/I$ spanned by 1). Also, $L_k = S/I$, so that $S/I = L_k \subseteq \bigcup_{p \in \mathbb{N}} L_p$. Combining this with $\bigcup_{p \in \mathbb{N}} L_p \subseteq S/I$, we obtain $\bigcup_{p \in \mathbb{N}} L_p = S/I$.

Hence, it remains to prove that $L_a L_b \subseteq L_{a+b}$ for every $a, b \in \mathbb{N}$. So let us fix $a, b \in \mathbb{N}$. We must prove that $L_a L_b \subseteq L_{a+b}$.

If $a + b \geq k$, then this is obvious (because if $a + b \geq k$, then $k \leq a + b$, hence $L_k \subseteq L_{a+b}$ (since $L_0 \subseteq L_1 \subseteq L_2 \subseteq \cdots$), hence $L_a L_b \subseteq S/I = L_k \subseteq L_{a+b}$). Hence, we WLOG assume that $a + b < k$.

We must prove that $L_a L_b \subseteq L_{a+b}$. It clearly suffices to show that $fg \in L_{a+b}$ for each $f \in L_a$ and $g \in L_b$. So let us fix $f \in L_a$ and $g \in L_b$; we must prove that $fg \in L_{a+b}$.

Proposition 7.11 yields that $L_a = H_a$. Thus, $f \in L_a = H_a$, so that $f$ is a $k$-linear combination of the $h_\lambda$ with $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$ satisfying $\ell(\lambda) \leq a$ (because $H_a$ is the $k$-submodule of $S/I$ spanned by these $h_\lambda$). Since the claim we are proving (that is, $fg \in L_{a+b}$) depends $k$-linearly on $f$, we can thus WLOG assume that $f$ is one of those $h_\lambda$. In other words, we can WLOG assume that $f = h_\alpha$ for some $\alpha \in P_{k,n}$ satisfying $\ell(\alpha) \leq a$. Assume this, and consider this $\alpha$. For similar reasons, we WLOG assume that $g = h_\beta$ for some $\beta \in P_{k,n}$ satisfying $\ell(\beta) \leq b$. Consider this $\beta$.

Note that each entry of $\alpha$ is $\leq n - k$ (since $\alpha \in P_{k,n}$), and therefore $\leq n$. Thus, we can consider $\alpha$ as an $a$-tuple of elements of $\{0,1,\ldots,n\}$ (since $\ell(\alpha) \leq a$). Likewise, consider $\beta$ as a $b$-tuple of elements of $\{0,1,\ldots,n\}$.

Let $\gamma$ be the concatenation of the $a$-tuple $\alpha$ with the $b$-tuple $\beta$. Thus, $\gamma$ is an $(a+b)$-tuple of elements of $\{0,1,\ldots,n\}$ (since $\alpha$ is an $a$-tuple of elements of $\{0,1,\ldots,n\}$ and since $\beta$ is a $b$-tuple of elements of $\{0,1,\ldots,n\}$), and satisfies $h_\gamma = h_\alpha h_\beta$. (But $\gamma$ is not necessarily a partition.) Moreover, $a + b \leq k$ (since $a + b < k$). Finally, write $\gamma$ in the form $\gamma = (\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \ldots, \gamma_{a+b})$; then, we have $\gamma_i \leq n$ for each $i \in \{1,2,\ldots,a+b\}$ (because $\gamma$ is an $(a+b)$-tuple of elements of...
\{0, 1, \ldots, n\}). Hence, Lemma 7.8 (applied to \(p = a + b, \nu = \gamma\) and \(\nu_i = \gamma_i\)) yields \(\overline{h}_\gamma \in H_{a+b}\). But Proposition 7.11 yields that \(L_{a+b} = H_{a+b}\).

From \(f = \overline{h}_a\) and \(g = \overline{h}_b\), we obtain \(fg = \overline{h}_a \overline{h}_b = \overline{h}_a \overline{h}_b = \overline{h}_\gamma\) (since \(h_ah_b = h_\gamma\)). Thus, \(fg = \overline{h}_\gamma \in H_{a+b} = L_{a+b}\) (since \(L_{a+b} = H_{a+b}\)). This completes our proof of Proposition 7.15.

\[\text{Corollary 7.16.}\] We have \((L_1)^m \subseteq L_m\) for each \(m \in \mathbb{N}\).

\[\text{Proof of Corollary 7.16}\] This follows by induction on \(m\), using the facts (which we proved in Proposition 7.15) that \(1 \in L_0\) and that \(L_aL_b \subseteq L_{a+b}\) for every \(a, b \in \mathbb{N}\).

### 7.5. A formula for hook-shaped Schur functions

\[\text{Lemma 7.17.}\] Let \(m\) be a positive integer. Let \(j \in \mathbb{N}\). Then,

\[s_{(m,1^j)} = \sum_{i=1}^{m} (-1)^{i-1} h_{m-i} e_{j+i}.\]

\[\text{Proof of Lemma 7.17}\] For each \(N \in \mathbb{N}\), we have

\[\sum_{p=0}^{N} (-1)^p h_{N-p} e_p = \delta_{0,N}. \tag{52}\]

(This is just the equality (46), with \(j\) renamed as \(p\).)

From \(m > 0\) and \(j \geq 0\), we obtain \(m+j > 0\), so that \(\delta_{0,m+j} = 0\). The equality (52) (applied to \(N = m+j\)) becomes

\[\sum_{p=0}^{m+j} (-1)^p h_{m+j-p} e_p = \delta_{0,m+j} = 0.\]
Thus,

\[
0 = \sum_{p=0}^{m+j} (-1)^p h_{m+j+p} \epsilon_p = \sum_{p=0}^{m+j} (-1)^p h_{m+j+p} \epsilon_p
\]

\[
= \sum_{i=-m}^{j} (-1)^{j-i} h_{m+i} \epsilon_{j-i} \quad \text{ (here, we have substituted } j - i \text{ for } p \text{ in the sum)}
\]

\[
= \sum_{i=-m}^{j} (-1)^{j-i} h_{m+i} \epsilon_{j-i} \quad \text{ (here, we have substituted } -i \text{ for } i \text{ in the sum)}
\]

\[
= \sum_{i=1}^{m} (-1)^{j+i} h_{m-i} \epsilon_{j+i} + \sum_{i=0}^{j} (-1)^i h_{m+i} \epsilon_{j-i}
\]

\[
= \sum_{i=1}^{m} (-1)^{j+i} h_{m-i} \epsilon_{j+i} + (-1)^j s_{(m,1)} \quad \text{ (by (45))}
\]

Solving this equality for \( s_{(m,1)} \), we obtain

\[
s_{(m,1)} = - \frac{1}{(-1)^j} \sum_{i=1}^{m} (-1)^{j+i} h_{m-i} \epsilon_{j+i} = \sum_{i=1}^{m} (-1)^{j-i} h_{m-i} \epsilon_{j+i}.
\]

This proves Lemma 7.17.

7.6. The submodules \( C \) and \( R_p \) of \( S/I \)

Next, we introduce some more \( k \)-submodules of \( S/I \):

**Definition 7.18.** (a) Let \( C \) be the \( k \)-submodule of \( S/I \) spanned by the \( \overline{e}_i \) with \( i \in \mathbb{N} \).

(b) For each \( p \in \mathbb{Z} \), we let \( R_p \) be the \( k \)-submodule of \( S/I \) spanned by the \( \overline{e}_i \) with \( i \in \mathbb{N} \) satisfying \( i \leq p \).

We recall that \( e_i = 0 \) for every \( i > k \). Thus, \( \overline{e}_i = 0 \) for every \( i > k \). Hence, the \( k \)-module \( C \) is spanned by \( \overline{e}_0, \overline{e}_1, \ldots, \overline{e}_k \) (because all the other among its designated generators \( \overline{e}_i \) are 0). Also, the definition of \( C \) yields \( \overline{e}_0 \in C \), so that \( 1 = \overline{e}_0 \in C \). Thus, each \( i \in \mathbb{N} \) satisfies \( C^i = \sum_{\epsilon \in \mathbb{C}} C^i \subseteq C C^i = C^{i+1} \). In other words, \( C^0 \subseteq C \subseteq C^2 \subseteq \cdots \).

Note that \( R_0 \subseteq R_1 \subseteq R_2 \subseteq \cdots \). Also:
Proposition 7.19. We have \( R_{n-k} = L_1 \).

Proof of Proposition 7.19 We WLOG assume that \( k \neq 0 \), because the case when \( k = 0 \) is trivial for its own reasons.\(^\text{12}\) Thus, \( k > 0 \), and therefore the partition \((i)\) belongs to \( P_{k,n} \) for each \( i \in \{0,1,\ldots,n-k\} \).

Recall that \( L_1 \) was defined as the \( k \)-submodule of \( S/I \) spanned by the \( \overline{s}_\lambda \) with \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \) satisfying \( \ell(\lambda) \leq 1 \). But the \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \) satisfying \( \ell(\lambda) \leq 1 \) are exactly the partitions of the form \((i)\) for \( i \in \{0,1,\ldots,n-k\} \). Hence, \( L_1 \) is the \( k \)-submodule of \( S/I \) spanned by the \( \overline{s}_i \) with \( i \in \{0,1,\ldots,n-k\} \). Since we have \( s_i = h_i \) for each \( i \in \{0,1,\ldots,n-k\} \), we can rewrite this as follows: \( L_1 \) is the \( k \)-submodule of \( S/I \) spanned by the \( \overline{h}_i \) with \( i \in \{0,1,\ldots,n-k\} \). In other words, \( L_1 \) is the \( k \)-submodule of \( S/I \) spanned by the \( \overline{h}_i \) with \( i \in \mathbb{N} \) satisfying \( i \leq n-k \). But this is precisely the definition of the \( k \)-submodule \( R_{n-k} \). Hence, \( L_1 = R_{n-k} \). This proves Proposition 7.19. \( \Box \)

It is easy to see that \( R_{n-k} = R_{n-k+1} = \cdots = R_n \), but the sequence \((R_0,R_1,R_2,\ldots)\) may and may not grow after its \( n \)-th term depending on the choice of \( a_1,a_2,\ldots,a_k \). So the family \((R_p)_{p \in \mathbb{Z}}\) is a filtration of some \( k \)-submodule of \( S/I \), but it isn’t easy to say which specific \( k \)-submodule it is.

Lemma 7.20. We have \( R_p \subseteq C^p \) for each \( p \in \mathbb{N} \).

Proof of Lemma 7.20 We have

\[ \bar{c}_i \in C \quad \text{for each} \quad i \in \mathbb{N} \]  

(by the definition of \( C \)).

Let \( p \in \mathbb{N} \). Recall that \( R_p \) is the \( k \)-submodule of \( S/I \) spanned by the \( \overline{h}_i \) with \( i \in \mathbb{N} \) satisfying \( i \leq p \). Hence, in order to prove that \( R_p \subseteq C^p \), it suffices to show that \( \overline{h}_i \in C^p \) for each \( i \in \mathbb{N} \) satisfying \( i \leq p \).

We first claim that

\[ \overline{h}_i \in C^i \quad \text{for each} \quad i \in \mathbb{N}. \] \( \Box \)

[Proof of (54):] We shall prove (54) by strong induction on \( i \). So we fix \( j \in \mathbb{N} \), and we assume (as induction hypothesis) that (54) holds for all \( i < j \). We must now prove that (54) holds for \( i = j \). In other words, we must prove that \( \overline{h}_j \in C^j \).

If \( j = 0 \), then this is obvious (because in this case, we have \( \overline{h}_j = \overline{h}_0 = 1 = 1 \in C^0 \)). Thus, we WLOG assume that \( j \neq 0 \). Hence, \( j \) is a positive integer. Thus, Corollary 3.3 (applied to \( j \) instead of \( p \)) yields

\[ h_j = - \sum_{t=1}^{k} (-1)^t e_t h_{j-t}. \]

\( \text{Proof.} \) Assume that \( k = 0 \). Then, \( S = \mathbb{k} \) and \( I = 0 \), whence \( S/I = \mathbb{k} \cdot 1 \). Both \( \mathbb{k} \)-submodules \( R_{n-k} \) and \( L_1 \) contain \( 1 \) (since \( 1 = \overline{h}_0 \) and since \( 1 = \overline{s}_\lambda \)); hence, both of these \( \mathbb{k} \)-submodules must be the whole \( S/I \) (since \( S/I = \mathbb{k} \cdot 1 \)) and therefore must be equal. So we have proven \( R_{n-k} = L_1 \). In other words, we have proven Proposition 7.19 under the assumption that \( k = 0 \).
Hence,

$$\overline{h}_j = -\sum_{t=1}^k (-1)^t e_t h_{j-t} = -\sum_{t=1}^k (-1)^t \mathbb{C}_{t}$$

(by (53))

$$\overline{h}_{j-t} \in \mathbb{C}^{j-t}$$

(by the induction hypothesis, since $j-t < j$)

$$\in -\sum_{t=1}^k (-1)^t \mathbb{C}^{j-t} \subseteq -\sum_{t=1}^k (-1)^t \mathbb{C}^j \subseteq \mathbb{C}^j.$$

In other words, (54) holds for $i = j$. This completes the induction step. Thus, (54) is proven.

Now, let us fix $i \in \mathbb{N}$ satisfying $i \leq p$. Then, $\mathbb{C}^i \subseteq \mathbb{C}^p$ (since $i \leq p$ and $\mathbb{C}^0 \subseteq \mathbb{C}^1 \subseteq \mathbb{C}^2 \subseteq \cdots$). But (54) yields $\overline{h}_i \in \mathbb{C}^i \subseteq \mathbb{C}^p$.

Now, forget that we fixed $i$. We thus have shown that $\overline{h}_i \in \mathbb{C}^i$ for each $i \in \mathbb{N}$ satisfying $i \leq p$. As we have said, this proves Lemma 7.20.

Lemma 7.21. Let $m$ be a positive integer. Let $j \in \mathbb{N}$. Then, $s_{(m,1)} \in \mathbb{R}^{m-1}$.

Proof of Lemma 7.21. Lemma 7.17 yields

$$s_{(m,1)} = \sum_{i=1}^m (-1)^{i-1} h_{m-i} e_{j+i}.$$

This is an equality in $\Lambda$. If we evaluate both of its sides at $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k$, then we obtain

$$s_{(m,1)} = \sum_{i=1}^m (-1)^{i-1} h_{m-i} e_{j+i}.$$

Thus,

$$s_{(m,1)} = \sum_{i=1}^m (-1)^{i-1} h_{m-i} e_{j+i} = \sum_{i=1}^m (-1)^{i-1} \overline{h}_{m-i} e_{j+i} \in \mathbb{R}^{m-1}$$

(by the definition of $R_{m-1}$, (by the definition of $C$) since $m-i \leq m-1$)

$$\in \sum_{i=1}^m (-1)^{i-1} R_{m-1} \mathbb{C} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{m-1} \subseteq \mathbb{C}.$$

This proves Lemma 7.21.

Corollary 7.22. Let $m$ be a positive integer. Then, $\overline{h}_{n+m} \in \mathbb{R}^{m-1}$.
Proof of Corollary 7.22. Proposition 7.2 yields
\[ h_{n+m} = \sum_{j=0}^{k-1} (-1)^j a_{k-j}s_{(m,1^j)} \mod I. \]

Thus,
\[
\overline{h_{n+m}} = \sum_{j=0}^{k-1} (-1)^j a_{k-j}s_{(m,1^j)} = \sum_{j=0}^{k-1} (-1)^j a_{k-j} \sum_{i \in R_{m-1}C} (m,1^j)
\]
\[
\in \sum_{j=0}^{k-1} (-1)^j a_{k-j}R_{m-1}C \subseteq R_{m-1}C.
\]

This proves Corollary 7.22. \(\square\)

Lemma 7.23. Let \(j \in \mathbb{N}\) be such that \(j \leq n\).

(a) We have \(\overline{h_j} \subseteq L_1\).

(b) Assume that \(n > k\) and \(j \neq n - k\). Then, \(\overline{h_j} \subseteq R_{n-k-1}\).

Proof of Lemma 7.23. (a) We are in one of the following two cases:

Case 1: We have \(j \leq n - k\).

Case 2: We have \(j > n - k\).

Let us first consider Case 1. In this case, we have \(j \leq n - k\). Recall that \(R_{n-k}\) was defined as the \(k\)-submodule of \(S/I\) spanned by the \(\overline{h_i}\) with \(i \in \mathbb{N}\) satisfying \(i \leq n - k\). Hence, \(\overline{h_j} \subseteq R_{n-k}\) (since \(j \in \mathbb{N}\) and \(j \leq n - k\)). Thus, \(\overline{h_j} \subseteq R_{n-k} = L_1\) (by Proposition 7.19). Thus, Lemma 7.23 (a) is proven in Case 1.

Let us now consider Case 2. In this case, we have \(j > n - k\). Hence, \(n - k < j \leq n\), so that \(j \in \{n - k + 1, n - k + 2, \ldots, n\}\) and therefore \(j - (n - k) \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}\). Hence, \(\ref{lemma:7.23}\) (applied to \(j - (n - k)\) instead of \(j\)) yields \(h_j \equiv a_{j-(n-k)} \mod I\).

Hence, \(\overline{h_j} = \overline{a_{j-(n-k)}} \subseteq \mathbb{k}\).

But \(0 \leq n - k\) and thus \(\overline{h_0} \subseteq R_{n-k}\) (by the definition of \(R_{n-k}\)). Hence, \(1 = \overline{h_0} \subseteq R_{n-k}\), so that \(\mathbb{k} \subseteq R_{n-k}\) and thus \(\overline{h_j} \subseteq \mathbb{k} \subseteq R_{n-k} = L_1\) (by Proposition 7.19). Thus, Lemma 7.23 (a) is proven in Case 2.

We have now proven Lemma 7.23 (a) in each of the two Cases 1 and 2. Thus, Lemma 7.23 (a) is proven.

(b) We are in one of the following two cases:

Case 1: We have \(j \leq n - k\).

Case 2: We have \(j > n - k\).

Let us first consider Case 1. In this case, we have \(j \leq n - k\). Thus, \(j < n - k\) (since \(j \neq n - k\)), so that \(j \leq n - k - 1\). Thus, \(n - k - 1 \geq j \geq 0\), so that \(n - k - 1 \in \mathbb{N}\). Recall that \(R_{n-k-1}\) is defined as the \(k\)-submodule of \(S/I\) spanned by the \(\overline{h_i}\) with \(i \in \mathbb{N}\) satisfying \(i \leq n - k - 1\). Hence, \(\overline{h_j} \subseteq R_{n-k-1}\) (since \(j \in \mathbb{N}\) and \(j \leq n - k - 1\)). Thus, Lemma 7.23 (b) is proven in Case 1.
Let us now consider Case 2. In this case, we have \( j > n - k \). Hence, \( n - k < j \leq n \), so that \( j \in \{ n - k + 1, n - k + 2, \ldots, n \} \) and therefore \( j - (n - k) \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\} \). Hence, (15) (applied to \( j - (n - k) \) instead of \( j \)) yields \( h_j \equiv a_{j-(n-k)} \mod I \).

Hence, \( h_j = a_j - (n - k) \in k \).

But \( n - k > 0 \) (since \( n > k \)), and thus \( 1 \leq n - k \), so that \( 0 \leq n - k - 1 \). Hence, \( 1 = h_0 \in R_{n-k-1} \) (by the definition of \( R_{n-k-1} \)). Hence, \( 1 \in h \in k \subseteq R_{n-k-1} \). Thus, Lemma 7.23 (b) is proven in Case 2.

We have now proven Lemma 7.23 (b) in each of the two Cases 1 and 2. Thus, Lemma 7.23 (b) is proven.

### 7.7. Connection to the \( Q_p \)

**Convention 7.24.** We WLOG assume that \( k > 0 \) from now on.

Now, let us recall Definition 6.11.

**Proposition 7.25.** We have \( L_{k-1} = Q_0 \).

**Proof of Proposition 7.25.** Recall the following:

- We have defined \( L_{k-1} \) as the \( k \)-submodule of \( S/I \) spanned by the \( s_\lambda \) with \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \) satisfying \( \ell(\lambda) \leq k - 1 \).

- We have defined \( Q_0 \) as the \( k \)-submodule of \( S/I \) spanned by the \( s_\lambda \) with \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \) satisfying \( \lambda_k \leq 0 \).

Comparing these two definitions, we conclude that \( L_{k-1} = Q_0 \) (because for any \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \), the statement \( (\ell(\lambda) \leq k - 1) \) is equivalent to the statement \( (\lambda_k \leq 0) \)). This proves Proposition 7.25.

**Lemma 7.26.** We have \( (L_1)^{k-1} \subseteq Q_0 \).

**Proof of Lemma 7.26.** Corollary 7.16 yields \( (L_1)^{k-1} \subseteq L_{k-1} = Q_0 \) (by Proposition 7.25). This proves Lemma 7.26.

**Lemma 7.27.** Let \( p \in \mathbb{Z} \). Then, \( CQ_p \subseteq Q_{p+1} \).

**Proof of Lemma 7.27.** Lemma 6.16 shows that \( \overline{e}_iQ_p \subseteq Q_{p+1} \) for each \( i \in \mathbb{N} \). Thus, \( CQ_p \subseteq Q_{p+1} \) (since the \( k \)-module \( C \) is spanned by the \( \overline{e}_i \) with \( i \in \mathbb{N} \)). This proves Lemma 7.27.

**Corollary 7.28.** Let \( p \in \mathbb{Z} \) and \( q \in \mathbb{N} \). Then, \( C^qQ_p \subseteq Q_{p+q} \).

**Proof of Corollary 7.28.** This follows by induction on \( q \), where the induction step uses Lemma 7.27.
7.8. Criteria for $\text{coeff}_\omega \left( \overline{h}_v \right) = 0$

We shall now show two sufficient criteria for when a $p$-tuple $v \in \mathbb{Z}^p$ satisfies $\text{coeff}_\omega \left( \overline{h}_v \right) = 0$.

**Theorem 7.29.** Let $p \in \mathbb{N}$ be such that $p \leq k$. Let $v = (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_p) \in \mathbb{Z}^p$ be a $p$-tuple of integers. Let $q \in \{1, 2, \ldots, p\}$ be such that

$$v_1 \geq v_2 \geq \cdots \geq v_q > n \geq v_{q+1} \geq v_{q+2} \geq \cdots \geq v_p$$

and $v_q \leq 2n - k - q$.

Assume also that

$$v_i \leq 2n - k + 1 \quad \text{for each } i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, p\}. \quad (55)$$

Then, $\text{coeff}_\omega \left( \overline{h}_v \right) = 0$.

**Proof of Theorem 7.29.** From $v_q \leq 2n - k - q$, we obtain $2n - k - q \geq v_q > n$, so that $n - k - q > 0$. Thus, $n - k - q - 1 \in \mathbb{N}$.

If any of the entries $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_p$ of $v$ is negative, then Theorem 7.29 holds for easy reasons.

Hence, we WLOG assume that none of the entries $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_p$ of $v$ is negative. Thus, all of the entries $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_p$ are nonnegative integers.

From $p \leq k$, we obtain $p - 1 \leq k - 1$ and thus $L_{p-1} \subseteq L_{k-1}$ (since $L_0 \subseteq L_1 \subseteq L_2 \subseteq \cdots$). Thus,

$$L_{p-1} \subseteq L_{k-1} = Q_0 \quad (56)$$

(by Proposition 7.25).

From $n \geq v_{q+1} \geq v_{q+2} \geq \cdots \geq v_p$, we conclude that $v_j \leq n$ for each $j \in \{q+1, q+2, \ldots, p\}$. In other words, $v_{q+i} \leq n$ for each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, p-q\}$.

Hence, Proposition 7.14 (applied to $p-q$, $(v_{q+1}, v_{q+2}, \ldots, v_p)$ and $v_{q+i}$ instead of $p$, $v$ and $v_i$) yields $\overline{h}_{(v_{q+1}, v_{q+2}, \ldots, v_p)} \in H_{p-q}$. But Proposition 7.11 (applied to $p-q$ instead of $p$) yields $L_{p-q} = H_{p-q}$. Thus,

$$\overline{h}_{(v_{q+1}, v_{q+2}, \ldots, v_p)} \in H_{p-q} = L_{p-q} \quad (57)$$

Next, we claim that

$$\overline{h}_{v_i} \in L_1C \quad \text{for each } i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, q-1\}. \quad (58)$$

Indeed, in this case we have $v_i < 0$ for some $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, p\}$, and therefore $h_{v_i} = 0$ for this $i$, and therefore

$$h_v = h_{v_1} h_{v_2} \cdots h_{v_p} = (h_{v_1} h_{v_2} \cdots h_{v_{q-1}}) h_{v_q} \left( h_{v_{q+1}} h_{v_{q+2}} \cdots h_{v_p} \right) = 0,$$

and therefore $\text{coeff}_\omega \left( \overline{h}_v \right) = 0$, qed.
[Proof of (58): Let \( i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, q-1\} \). Then, \( v_i > n \) (since \( v_1 \geq v_2 \geq \cdots \geq v_q > n \)), so that \( v_i - n \) is a positive integer. Thus, Corollary 7.22 (applied to \( m = v_i - n \)) yields \( \overline{h}_{v_i} \in R_{v_i-n-1}C \).

But \( v_i \leq 2n - k + 1 \) (by (55)), so that \( v_i - n - 1 \leq n - k \). Thus, \( R_{v_i-n-1} \subseteq R_{n-k} \) (since \( R_0 \subseteq R_1 \subseteq R_2 \subseteq \cdots \)). Thus, \( R_{v_i-n-1} \subseteq R_{n-k} = L_1 \) (by Proposition 7.19). Hence, \( \overline{h}_{v_i} \in R_{v_i-n-1}C \subseteq L_1C \). This proves (58).]

From (58), we obtain

\[
\overline{h}_{v_1} h_{v_2} \cdots \overline{h}_{v_q} - 1 \in \left( L_1C \right)^{q-1} = \left( (L_1)^{q-1} \right) \subseteq L_{q-1}C^{q-1}.
\]

(by Corollary 7.16)

Also, \( v_q > n \), so that \( v_q - n \) is a positive integer. Thus, Corollary 7.22 (applied to \( m = v_q - n \)) yields \( \overline{h}_{v_q} \in R_{v_q-n-1}C \). But \( v_q \leq 2n - k - q \) and thus \( v_q - n - 1 \leq n - k - q - 1 \). Hence, \( R_{v_q-n-1} \subseteq R_{n-k-q-1} \) (since \( R_0 \subseteq R_1 \subseteq R_2 \subseteq \cdots \)). Thus, \( \overline{h}_{v_q} \in R_{v_q-n-1}C \subseteq R_{n-k-q-1}C \).

Recall that \( h_v = \overline{h}_{v_1} h_{v_2} \cdots h_{v_q} \). Thus,

\[
\overline{h}_v = \overline{h}_{v_1} h_{v_2} \cdots h_{v_q} = \overline{h}_{v_1} h_{v_2} \cdots h_{v_q}
\]

\[
= \left( \overline{h}_{v_1} h_{v_2} \cdots \overline{h}_{v_q} \right) \in L_{q-1}C^{q-1} \quad \text{(by (57))}
\]

\[
\in L_{q-1}C^{q-1} R_{n-k-q-1}C L_{p-q} = \underbrace{C^{q-1}}_{C^q} \underbrace{R_{n-k-q-1}}_{C^{n-k-1}} \underbrace{L_{p-q}}_{L_{q-1} L_{p-q}}
\]

\[
\subseteq \underbrace{C^{q-1} C^{n-k-1} L_{p-q}}_{C^{(q-1)+p-q}} \subseteq C^{n-k-1} Q_0
\]

(by Corollary 7.28 applied to \( n - k - 1 \) and 0 instead of \( q \) and \( p \)). In other words, \( \overline{h}_v \in Q_{n-k-1} \). Hence, \( \text{coeff}_\omega \left( \overline{h}_v \right) \in \text{coeff}_\omega \left( Q_{n-k-1} \right) = 0 \) (by Lemma 6.12), and thus \( \text{coeff}_\omega \left( \overline{h}_v \right) = 0 \). This proves Theorem 7.29. \( \square \)
**Theorem 7.30.** Assume that \( n > k \). Let \( \gamma = (\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \ldots, \gamma_k) \in \mathbb{Z}^k \) be a \( k \)-tuple of integers such that \( \gamma \neq \omega \).

Assume that

\[
\gamma_i \leq 2n - k - i \quad \text{for each } i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}.
\]  

(59)

Then, \( \text{coeff}_\omega \left( h_\gamma \right) = 0 \).

**Proof of Theorem 7.30.** We have \( k \neq 0 \). Thus, \( k > 0 \); hence, \( \gamma_1 \) is well-defined.

If any of the entries \( \gamma_1, \gamma_2, \ldots, \gamma_k \) of \( \gamma \) is negative, then Theorem 7.30 holds for easy reasons.\(^{14}\) Hence, we WLOG assume that none of the entries \( \gamma_1, \gamma_2, \ldots, \gamma_k \) of \( \gamma \) is negative. Thus, all of the entries \( \gamma_1, \gamma_2, \ldots, \gamma_k \) are nonnegative integers.

In other words, \( (\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \ldots, \gamma_k) \in \mathbb{N}^k \).

Let \( \nu = (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k) \in \mathbb{Z}^k \) be the weakly decreasing permutation of the \( k \)-tuple \( \gamma = (\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \ldots, \gamma_k) \). Thus, \( h_{v_1} h_{v_2} \cdots h_{v_k} = h_{\gamma_1} h_{\gamma_2} \cdots h_{\gamma_k} \). Hence, \( h_\nu = h_{v_1} h_{v_2} \cdots h_{v_k} = h_{\gamma_1} h_{\gamma_2} \cdots h_{\gamma_k} = h_\gamma \).

Recall that \( (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k) \) is a permutation of \( (\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \ldots, \gamma_k) \). In other words, there exists a permutation \( \sigma \in S_k \) such that

\[
\left( v_i = \gamma_{\sigma(i)} \text{ for each } i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\} \right).
\]  

(60)

Consider this \( \sigma \).

Recall that \( (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k) \) is weakly decreasing. Thus, \( v_1 \geq v_2 \geq \cdots \geq v_k \). Also, \( (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k) \in \mathbb{N}^k \) (since \( (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k) \) is a permutation of \( (\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \ldots, \gamma_k) \in \mathbb{N}^k \)).

For each \( i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\} \), we have

\[
v_i = \gamma_{\sigma(i)} \quad \text{(by (60))}
\]

\[
\leq 2n - k - \sigma(i)
\]  

(61)

(by (59), applied to \( \sigma(i) \) instead of \( i \)).

We are in one of the following two cases:

Case 1: We have \( v_1 \leq n \).

Case 2: We have \( v_1 > n \).

\(^{14}\)Proof. Assume the contrary. Thus, \( k = 0 \). Now, \( \gamma \in \mathbb{Z}^k = \mathbb{Z}^0 \) (since \( k = 0 \)), whence \( \gamma = (\) \).

But \( k = 0 \) also leads to \( \omega = (\) \), and thus \( \gamma = (\) \) \( = \omega \). But this contradicts \( \gamma \neq \omega \). This contradiction shows that our assumption was false. Qed.

\(^{15}\)Indeed, in this case we have \( \gamma_i < 0 \) for some \( i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\} \), and therefore \( h_{\gamma_i} = 0 \) for this \( i \), and therefore

\[
h_{\gamma} = h_{\gamma_1} h_{\gamma_2} \cdots h_{\gamma_k} = (h_{\gamma_1} h_{\gamma_2} \cdots h_{\gamma_{i-1}}) \frac{h_{\gamma_i}}{h_{\gamma_{i+1}} h_{\gamma_{i+2}} \cdots h_{\gamma_k}} = 0,
\]

and therefore \( \text{coeff}_\omega \left( h_\gamma \right) = 0 \), qed.
Let us first consider Case 1. In this case, we have $v_1 \leq n$. But recall that $\gamma \neq \omega$. Hence, there exists at least one $q \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$ satisfying $v_q \neq n - k$ \[6\]

Consider such a $q$.

Next, we claim that $\overline{h_{v_i}} \in L_1$ for each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$.

[Proof of (62): Let $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$. We have $v_1 \geq v_2 \geq \cdots \geq v_k$, thus $v_i \leq v_1 \leq n$. Now, $v_i \leq n$ and $v_i \in \mathbb{N}$ (since $(v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k) \in \mathbb{N}^k$). Hence, Lemma 7.23 (a) (applied to $j = v_i$) yields $\overline{h_{v_i}} \in L_1$. This proves (62).]

Also, $v_1 \geq v_2 \geq \cdots \geq v_k$, thus $v_q \leq v_1 \leq n$. Also, $n > k$ and $v_q \in \mathbb{N}$ (since $(v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k) \in \mathbb{N}^k$) and $v_q \neq n - k$. Hence, Lemma 7.23 (b) (applied to $j = v_q$) yields $\overline{h_{v_q}} \in R_{n-k-1}$. From $n > k$, we obtain $n - k > 0$, so that $n - k \geq 1$, and thus $n - k - 1 \in \mathbb{N}$.

Now, $h_v = h_{v_1} h_{v_2} \cdots h_{v_k} = \prod_{i=1}^{k} h_{v_i}$, so that

\[
\overline{h_v} = \prod_{i=1}^{k} \overline{h_{v_i}} = \prod_{i \neq q} \left( \prod_{i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}: i \neq q} \overline{h_{v_i}} \right) \in L_1 \quad \text{(by Lemma 7.28)}
\]

\[
\subseteq \left( \prod_{i \neq q} \overline{h_{v_i}} \right) L_1 \subset C^{n-1} \quad \text{(by Proposition 7.25)}
\]

\[
= Q_0 C^{n-1} = C^{n-k-1} Q_0 \subseteq Q_0 + (n-k-1)
\]

(by Corollary 7.28 applied to $n - k - 1$ and 0 instead of $q$ and $p$). In other words, $\overline{h_v} \in Q_{n-k-1}$. In view of $h_v = h_{v_1}$, this rewrites as $\overline{h_{v_1}} \in Q_{n-k-1}$. Hence, coeff$_\omega (\overline{h_{v_1}}) \in$ coeff$_\omega (Q_{n-k-1}) = 0$ (by Lemma 6.12), and thus coeff$_\omega (\overline{h_{v_1}}) = 0$. Thus, Theorem 7.30 is proven in Case 1.

Let us now consider Case 2. In this case, we have $v_1 > n$. Hence, there exists at least one $r \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$ such that $v_r > n$ (namely, $r = 1$). Let $q$ be the largest such $r$. Thus, $v_q > n$, but each $r > q$ satisfies $v_r \leq n$. Hence,

\[
v_1 \geq v_2 \geq \cdots \geq v_q > n \geq v_{q+1} \geq v_{q+2} \geq \cdots \geq v_k
\]

\[16\text{Proof. Assume the contrary. Thus, } v_i = n - k \text{ for each } i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}. \text{ Now, let } j \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\} \text{ be arbitrary. Then, } v_{\sigma^{-1}(j)} = n - k \text{ (since } v_i = n - k \text{ for each } i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}). \text{ But (60) (applied to } i = \sigma^{-1}(j)) \text{ yields } v_{\sigma^{-1}(j)} = \gamma_{\sigma(i)} = \gamma_j. \text{ Hence, } \gamma_j = v_{\sigma^{-1}(j)} = n - k. \text{ Now, forget that we fixed } j. \text{ We thus have proven that } \gamma_j = n - k \text{ for each } j \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}. \text{ Hence, } \gamma = (n - k, n - k, \ldots, n - k) = \omega. \text{ This contradicts } \gamma \neq \omega. \text{ This contradiction shows that our assumption was false, qed.}
\]
(since $v_1 \geq v_2 \geq \cdots \geq v_k$). Also, $v_q \leq 2n - k - q$ \textsuperscript{[17]} Furthermore, \textsuperscript{[61]} shows that 

$$v_i \leq 2n - k - \sigma(i) \leq 2n - k + 1$$

for each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$. Hence, Theorem \textsuperscript{[7.29]} (applied to $p = k$) yields $\text{coeff}_\omega \left( h_v \right) = 0$. In view of $h_v = h_\gamma$, this rewrites as $\text{coeff}_\omega \left( h_\gamma \right) = 0$. Thus, Theorem \textsuperscript{[7.30]} is proven in Case 2.

We have now proven Theorem \textsuperscript{[7.30]} in both Cases 1 and 2. Hence, Theorem \textsuperscript{[7.30]} always holds. \hfill $\Box$

### 7.9. A criterion for $\text{coeff}_\omega \left( \mathcal{S}_\lambda \right) = 0$

**Theorem 7.31.** Let $\lambda$ be a partition with at most $k$ parts. Assume that $\lambda_1 \leq 2 \left( n - k \right)$ and $\lambda \neq \omega$. Then, $\text{coeff}_\omega \left( \mathcal{S}_\lambda \right) = 0$.

**Proof.** We have $n > k$. \textsuperscript{[18]}

We have $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k)$ (since the partition $\lambda$ has at most $k$ parts). Proposition \textsuperscript{[5.7(a)]} yields

$$s_\lambda = \text{det} \left( (h_{\lambda_k - u + v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k} \right) = \sum_{\sigma \in S_k} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^{k} h_{\lambda_i - i + \sigma(i)}$$

(by the definition of a determinant). Hence,

$$\mathcal{S}_\lambda = \sum_{\sigma \in S_k} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^{k} h_{\lambda_i - i + \sigma(i)} = \sum_{\sigma \in S_k} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^{k} h_{\lambda_i - i + \sigma(i)}. \tag{63}$$

\textsuperscript{[17]}\textit{Proof.} Assume the contrary. Thus, $v_q > 2n - k - q.$

The map $\sigma$ is a permutation, and thus injective. Hence, $|\sigma(\{1, 2, \ldots, q\})| = |\{1, 2, \ldots, q\}| = q$. Thus, $\sigma(\{1, 2, \ldots, q\})$ cannot be a subset of $\{1, 2, \ldots, q - 1\}$ (because this would lead to $|\sigma(\{1, 2, \ldots, q\})| \leq |\{1, 2, \ldots, q - 1\}| = q - 1 < q$, which would contradict $|\sigma(\{1, 2, \ldots, q\})| = q$). In other words, not every $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, q\}$ satisfies $\sigma(i) \in \{1, 2, \ldots, q - 1\}$. In other words, there exists some $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, q\}$ that satisfies $\sigma(i) \notin \{1, 2, \ldots, q - 1\}$. Consider such an $i$.

From $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, q\}$, we obtain $i \leq q$ and thus $v_i \geq v_q$ (since $v_1 \geq v_2 \geq \cdots \geq v_k$).

From $\sigma(i) \notin \{1, 2, \ldots, q - 1\}$, we obtain $\sigma(i) > q - 1$, so that $\sigma(i) \geq q$. Now, \textsuperscript{[61]} yields $v_i \leq 2n - k - \sigma(i) \leq 2n - k - q$; but this contradicts $v_i \geq v_q > 2n - k - q$. This contradiction shows that our assumption was false, qed.

\textsuperscript{[18]}\textit{Proof.} Assume the contrary. Thus, $n \leq k$ and therefore $n = k$ (since $n \geq k$). Hence, $n - k = 0$.

Thus, $\lambda_1 \leq 2(n-k) = 0$, so that $\lambda_1 = 0$ and thus $\lambda = \emptyset$ (since $\lambda$ is a partition). But from $n - k = 0$, we also obtain $\omega = \emptyset$ (since $\omega = (n-k, n-k, \ldots, n-k)$). Thus, $\lambda = \emptyset = \omega$. But this contradicts $\lambda \neq \omega$. This contradiction shows that our assumption was wrong, qed.
Now, we claim that each $\sigma \in S_k$ satisfies

$$\text{coeff}_\omega \left( \prod_{i=1}^{k} h_{\lambda_i-i+\sigma(i)} \right) = 0.$$  \hfill (64)

[Proof of (64): Let $\sigma \in S_k$. Define a $k$-tuple $\gamma = (\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \ldots, \gamma_k) \in \mathbb{Z}^k$ of integers by

$$\gamma_i = \lambda_i - i + \sigma(i) \quad \text{for each } i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}.$$ \hfill (65)

Then, $\gamma \neq \omega$. Moreover,

$$\gamma_i \leq 2n - k - i \quad \text{for each } i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}.$$ \hfill (66)

Hence, Theorem 7.30 yields $\text{coeff}_\omega \left( \overline{h_\gamma} \right) = 0$. In view of

$$h_\gamma = h_{\gamma_1} h_{\gamma_2} \cdots h_{\gamma_k} = \prod_{i=1}^{k} h_{\gamma_i} = \prod_{i=1}^{k} h_{\lambda_i-i+\sigma(i)},$$

this rewrites as

$$\text{coeff}_\omega \left( \prod_{i=1}^{k} h_{\lambda_i-i+\sigma(i)} \right) = 0.$$ \hfill Thus, (64) is proven.]

19Proof. Assume the contrary. Thus, $\gamma = \omega$.

Let $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k-1\}$. From $\gamma = \omega$, we obtain $\gamma_i = \omega_i = n - k$. Comparing this with (65), we find $\lambda_i - i + \sigma(i) = n - k$. The same argument (applied to $i+1$ instead of $i$) yields $\lambda_{i+1} - (i+1) + \sigma(i+1) = n - k$. But $\lambda_i \geq \lambda_{i+1}$ (since $\lambda$ is a partition). Hence,

$$\lambda_i - i + \sigma(i+1) > \lambda_{i+1} - (i+1) + \sigma(i+1) = n - k = \lambda_i - i + \sigma(i)$$

(since $\lambda_i - i + \sigma(i) = n - k$). If we subtract $\lambda_i - i$ from this inequality, we obtain $\sigma(i+1) > \sigma(i)$ in $\sigma(i)$. In other words, $\sigma(i) < \sigma(i+1)$.

Now, forget that we fixed $i$. We thus have shown that each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k-1\}$ satisfies $\sigma(i) < \sigma(i+1)$. In other words, we have $\sigma(1) < \sigma(2) < \cdots < \sigma(k)$. Hence, $\sigma$ is a strictly increasing map from $\{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$ to $\{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$. But the only such map is id. Thus, $\sigma = \text{id}$. Hence, for each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$, we have

$$\gamma_i = \lambda_i - i + \sigma(i) = \lambda_i - i + \text{id}(i) = \lambda_i - i + i = \lambda_i.$$ \hfill (by 65)

Thus, $\gamma = \lambda$. Comparing this with $\gamma = \omega$, we obtain $\lambda = \omega$. This contradicts $\lambda \neq \omega$. This contradiction shows that our assumption was wrong. qed.

20Proof. Let $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$. Then, $\lambda_1 \geq \lambda_i$ (since $\lambda$ is a partition), so that $\lambda_i \leq \lambda_1 \leq 2(n-k)$.

Now, (65) yields

$$\gamma_i = \lambda_i - i + \sigma(i) \leq 2(n-k) - i + k = 2n-k-i,$$ \hfill qed.
From (63), we obtain
\[ \text{coeff}_\omega (s_\lambda) = \text{coeff}_\omega \left( \sum_{\sigma \in S_k} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^k h_{\lambda_i - i + \sigma(i)} \right) \]
\[ = \sum_{\sigma \in S_k} (-1)^\sigma \text{coeff}_\omega \left( \prod_{i=1}^k h_{\lambda_i - i + \sigma(i)} \right) = 0. \]
(by (64))

This proves Theorem 7.31. \( \square \)

8. Another proof of Theorem 6.3

We can use Theorem 7.31 to obtain a second proof of Theorem 6.3. To that end, we shall use a few more basic facts about Littlewood-Richardson coefficients. First we introduce a few notations (only for this section):

**Convention 8.1.** Convention 6.1 remains in place for the whole Section 8. We shall also use all the notations introduced in Section 6.

8.1. Some basics on Littlewood-Richardson coefficients

**Definition 8.2.** Let \( a \in \mathbb{N} \).
(a) We let \( \text{Par}_a \) denote the set of all partitions with size \( a \). (That is, \( \text{Par}_a = \{ \lambda \text{ is a partition } | |\lambda| = a \} \).)
(b) If \( \lambda \) and \( \mu \) are two partitions with size \( a \), then we write \( \lambda \succ \mu \) if and only if we have
\[ \lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_i \geq \mu_1 + \mu_2 + \cdots + \mu_i \quad \text{for each } i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, a\}. \]

This defines a binary relation \( \succ \) on \( \text{Par}_a \). This relation is the smaller-or-equal relation of a partial order on \( \text{Par}_a \), which is called the dominance order.

Here is another way to describe the dominance order:

**Remark 8.3.** Let \( a \in \mathbb{N} \). Let \( \lambda \) and \( \mu \) be two partitions with size \( a \). Then, we have \( \lambda \succ \mu \) if and only if we have
\[ \lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_i \geq \mu_1 + \mu_2 + \cdots + \mu_i \quad \text{for each } i \geq 1. \quad (66) \]

**Proof of Remark 8.3.** \( \iff \) Assume that we have (66). We must prove that \( \lambda \succ \mu \).
For each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, a\}$, we have $i \geq 1$ and therefore $\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_i \geq \mu_1 + \mu_2 + \cdots + \mu_i$ (by (66)). In other words, we have
\[
\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_i \geq \mu_1 + \mu_2 + \cdots + \mu_i \quad \text{for each } i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, a\}.
\]
In other words, we have $\lambda \triangleleft \mu$ (by the definition of the relation $\triangleleft$). This proves the “$\Leftarrow$” direction of Remark 8.3.

$\Longrightarrow$: Assume that $\lambda \triangleleft \mu$. We must prove that we have (66). We have assumed that $\lambda \triangleright \mu$. In other words, we have
\[
\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_i \geq \mu_1 + \mu_2 + \cdots + \mu_i \quad \text{for each } i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, a\}
\]
(by the definition of the relation $\triangleright$).

Now, let $i \geq 1$. Our goal is to show that $\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_i \geq \mu_1 + \mu_2 + \cdots + \mu_i$. If $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, a\}$, then this follows from (67). Hence, for the rest of this proof, we WLOG assume that we don’t have $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, a\}$. Hence, $i \geq a + 1$ (because $i \geq 1$), so that $a + 1 \leq i < i + 1$. But $\lambda$ is a partition; thus, $\lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \lambda_3 \geq \cdots$.

Now, recall that $\lambda$ is a partition of size $a$; hence, $|\lambda| = a$. Thus,
\[
a = |\lambda| = \lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \lambda_3 + \cdots = \sum_{p=1}^{\infty} \lambda_p = \left(\sum_{p=1}^{i+1} \lambda_p\right) + \sum_{p=i+2}^{\infty} \lambda_p
\]
\[
\geq \sum_{p=1}^{i+1} \lambda_{i+1} = (i + 1) \lambda_{i+1}.
\]

Hence, $\lambda_{i+1} \leq \frac{a}{i+1} < 1$ (since $a < a + 1 < i + 1$). Thus, $\lambda_{i+1} = 0$ (since $\lambda_{i+1} \in \mathbb{N}$). Furthermore, from $\lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \lambda_3 \geq \cdots$, we conclude that each $p \in \{i+1, i+2, i+3, \ldots\}$ satisfies $\lambda_{i+1} \geq \lambda_p$ and thus $\lambda_p \leq \lambda_{i+1} = 0$ and therefore $\lambda_p = 0$ (since $\lambda_p \in \mathbb{N}$). Hence, $\sum_{p=i+1}^{\infty} \lambda_p = \sum_{p=i+1}^{\infty} 0 = 0$. Thus,
\[
a = \sum_{p=1}^{\infty} \lambda_p = \sum_{p=1}^{i} \lambda_p + \sum_{p=i+1}^{\infty} \lambda_p = \sum_{p=1}^{i} \lambda_p = \lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_i.
\]

The same argument (applied to the partition $\mu$ instead of $\lambda$) yields
\[
a = \mu_1 + \mu_2 + \cdots + \mu_i.
\]

Comparing these two equalities, we find $\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_i = \mu_1 + \mu_2 + \cdots + \mu_i$. Hence, $\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_i \geq \mu_1 + \mu_2 + \cdots + \mu_i$.

Now, forget that we fixed $i$. We thus have shown that
\[
\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_i \geq \mu_1 + \mu_2 + \cdots + \mu_i \quad \text{for each } i \geq 1.
\]
In other words, (66). This proves the “$\rightarrow$” direction of Remark 8.3.
Definition 8.4. Let \( \mu \) and \( \nu \) be two partitions. Then, we define two new partitions \( \mu + \nu \) and \( \mu \sqcup \nu \) as follows:

- The partition \( \mu + \nu \) is defined as \( (\mu_1 + \nu_1, \mu_2 + \nu_2, \mu_3 + \nu_3, \ldots) \).
- The partition \( \mu \sqcup \nu \) is defined as the result of sorting the list \( (\mu_1, \mu_2, \ldots, \mu_{\ell(\mu)}, \nu_1, \nu_2, \ldots, \nu_{\ell(\nu)}) \) in decreasing order.

We shall use the following fact:

Proposition 8.5. Let \( a \in \mathbb{N} \) and \( b \in \mathbb{N} \) be such that \( a \leq b \). Let \( \mu \in \text{Par}_a \), \( \nu \in \text{Par}_{b-a} \) and \( \lambda \in \text{Par}_b \) be such that \( c_{\mu,\nu}^\lambda \neq 0 \). Then, \( \mu + \nu \triangleright \lambda \triangleright \mu \sqcup \nu \).

Proposition 8.5 is precisely [GriRei20, Exercise 2.9.17(c)] (with \( k \) and \( n \) renamed as \( a \) and \( b \)).

Corollary 8.6. Let \( \lambda, \mu \) and \( \nu \) be three partitions such that \( \lambda_1 > \mu_1 + \nu_1 \). Then, \( c_{\mu,\nu}^\lambda = 0 \).

Proof of Corollary 8.6. Assume the contrary. Thus, \( c_{\mu,\nu}^\lambda \neq 0 \).

Let \( a = |\mu| \); thus, \( \mu \in \text{Par}_a \). Let \( b = |\lambda| \); thus, \( \lambda \in \text{Par}_b \).

Proposition 6.17(c) shows that \( c_{\mu,\nu}^\lambda = 0 \) unless \( |\mu| + |\nu| = |\lambda| \) (since \( c_{\mu,\nu}^\lambda \neq 0 \)). Thus, \( |\nu| = |\lambda| - |\mu| = b - a \). Hence, \( b - a = |\nu| \geq 0 \), so that \( a \leq b \). Also, from \( |\nu| = b - a \), we obtain \( \nu \in \text{Par}_{b-a} \). Thus, Proposition 8.5 yields \( \mu + \nu \triangleright \lambda \triangleright \mu \sqcup \nu \).

But \( b = |\lambda| \geq \lambda_1 > \mu_1 + \nu_1 \geq 0 \), so that \( 1 \in \{1, 2, \ldots, b\} \).

Now, from \( \mu + \nu \triangleright \lambda \), we conclude that

\[
(\mu + \nu)_1 + (\mu + \nu)_2 + \cdots + (\mu + \nu)_i \geq \lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_i
\]

for each \( i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, b\} \).

(by the definition of the relation \( \triangleright \), since \( \mu + \nu \) and \( \lambda \) are two partitions of size \( b \)). Applying this to \( i = 1 \), we obtain \( (\mu + \nu)_1 \geq \lambda_1 \) (since \( 1 \in \{1, 2, \ldots, b\} \)). But the definition of \( \mu + \nu \) yields \( (\mu + \nu)_1 = \mu_1 + \nu_1 < \lambda_1 \) (since \( \lambda_1 > \mu_1 + \nu_1 \)). This contradicts \( (\mu + \nu)_1 \geq \lambda_1 \). This contradiction shows that our assumption was false. Hence, Corollary 8.6 is proven. \( \square \)

Next, we recall the Littlewood-Richardson rule itself:

Proposition 8.7. Let \( \lambda \) and \( \mu \) be two partitions. Then,

\[
s_{\lambda}s_{\mu} = \sum_{\rho \text{ is a partition}} c_{\lambda,\mu}^\rho s_{\rho}.
\]
Proposition 8.7 is precisely [GriRei20, (2.5.6)] (with \(\lambda\), \(\mu\) and \(\nu\) renamed as \(\rho\), \(\lambda\) and \(\mu\)).

**Corollary 8.8.** Let \(\lambda \in P_{k,n}\) and \(\mu \in P_{k,n}\). Then,

\[
s_{\lambda}s_{\mu} = \sum_{\rho \text{ is a partition with at most } k \text{ parts; } \rho_1 \leq 2(n-k)} c_{\lambda,\mu}^\rho s_\rho. 
\]

**Proof of Corollary 8.8**

If \(\rho\) is a partition satisfying \(\rho_1 > 2(n-k)\), then

\[
c_{\lambda,\mu}^\rho = 0. \tag{68}
\]

[Proof of (68): Let \(\rho\) be a partition satisfying \(\rho_1 > 2(n-k)\). We have \(\lambda \in P_{k,n}\); thus, each part of \(\lambda\) is \(\leq n-k\). Thus, \(\lambda_1 \leq n-k\). Similarly, \(\mu_1 \leq n-k\). Hence, \(\lambda_1 + \mu_1 \leq 2(n-k) < \rho_1\). In other words, \(\rho_1 > \lambda_1 + \mu_1\).

Hence, Corollary 8.6 (applied to \(\rho, \lambda\) and \(\mu\) instead of \(\lambda, \mu\) and \(\nu\)) yields \(c_{\lambda,\mu}^\rho = 0\). This proves (68).]

Proposition 8.7 yields

\[
s_{\lambda}s_{\mu} = \sum_{\rho \text{ is a partition}} c_{\lambda,\mu}^\rho s_\rho. 
\]

This is an equality in \(\Lambda\). Evaluating both of its sides at the \(k\) indeterminates \(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k\), we find

\[
s_{\lambda}s_{\mu} = \sum_{\rho \text{ is a partition; } \rho_1 \leq 2(n-k)} c_{\lambda,\mu}^\rho s_\rho + \sum_{\rho \text{ is a partition; } \rho_1 > 2(n-k)} c_{\lambda,\mu}^\rho s_\rho 
\]

\[
\left( \text{since each partition } \rho \text{ satisfies either } \rho_1 \leq 2(n-k) \text{ or } \rho_1 > 2(n-k) \text{ (but not both)} \right) 
\]

\[
= \sum_{\rho \text{ is a partition; } \rho_1 \leq 2(n-k)} c_{\lambda,\mu}^\rho s_\rho 
\]

\[
= \sum_{\rho \text{ is a partition with at most } k \text{ parts; } \rho_1 \leq 2(n-k)} c_{\lambda,\mu}^\rho s_\rho + \sum_{\rho \text{ is a partition with more than } k \text{ parts; } \rho_1 \leq 2(n-k)} c_{\lambda,\mu}^\rho s_\rho 
\]

\[
= \sum_{\rho \text{ is a partition with at most } k \text{ parts; } \rho_1 \leq 2(n-k)} c_{\lambda,\mu}^\rho s_\rho. 
\]

This proves Corollary 8.8. □
Next, let us recall another known fact on skew Schur functions:

**Proposition 8.9.** Let $\lambda$ be any partition. Then, $s_{\omega/\lambda^\vee} = s_\lambda$.

**Proof of Proposition 8.9.** From [GriRei20, Exercise 2.9.15(a)] (applied to $n - k$ and $\emptyset$ instead of $m$ and $\mu$), we obtain $s_{\lambda/\emptyset} = s_{\emptyset/\lambda^\vee}$. In view of $\emptyset^\vee = \omega$, this rewrites as $s_{\lambda/\emptyset} = s_{\omega/\lambda^\vee}$. Thus, $s_{\omega/\lambda^\vee} = s_{\lambda/\emptyset} = s_\lambda$. This proves Proposition 8.9. □

**Corollary 8.10.** Let $\lambda$ and $\mu$ be two partitions. Then,

$$c_{\omega}^{\lambda,\mu} = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \lambda \in P_{k,n} \text{ and } \mu = \lambda^\vee; \\ 0, & \text{else} \end{cases}$$

**Proof of Corollary 8.10.** Proposition 6.17 (a) (applied to $\omega$ and $\lambda$ instead of $\lambda$ and $\mu$) shows that

$$s_{\omega/\lambda} = \sum_{\nu \text{ is a partition}} c_{\lambda,\mu}^{\omega,\nu} s_{\nu}. \quad (69)$$

On the other hand, it is easy to see that

$$s_{\omega/\lambda} = \sum_{\nu \text{ is a partition}} \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \lambda \in P_{k,n} \text{ and } \nu = \lambda^\vee; \\ 0, & \text{else} \end{cases} s_{\nu}. \quad (70)$$

[Proof of (70): We are in one of the following two cases:

Case 1: We have $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$.

Case 2: We have $\lambda \notin P_{k,n}$.

Let us first consider Case 1. In this case, we have $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$. Thus, $\lambda^\vee$ is well-defined, and we have $(\lambda^\vee)^\vee = \lambda$. Hence, Proposition 8.9 (applied to $\lambda^\vee$ instead of $\lambda$) yields

$$s_{\omega/(\lambda^\vee)^\vee} = s_{\lambda^\vee} = \sum_{\nu \text{ is a partition}} \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \nu = \lambda^\vee; \\ 0, & \text{else} \end{cases} s_{\nu}$$

$$= \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \lambda \in P_{k,n} \text{ and } \nu = \lambda^\vee; \\ 0, & \text{else} \end{cases} (\text{since } \lambda \in P_{k,n} \text{ holds})$$

$$= \sum_{\nu \text{ is a partition}} \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \lambda \in P_{k,n} \text{ and } \nu = \lambda^\vee; \\ 0, & \text{else} \end{cases} s_{\nu}.$$

In view of $(\lambda^\vee)^\vee = \lambda$, this rewrites as

$$s_{\omega/\lambda} = \sum_{\nu \text{ is a partition}} \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \lambda \in P_{k,n} \text{ and } \nu = \lambda^\vee; \\ 0, & \text{else} \end{cases} s_{\nu}.$$
Thus, (70) is proven in Case 1.

Now, let us consider Case 2. In this case, we have \( \lambda \notin P_{k,n} \). Hence, \( \lambda \nsubseteq \omega \) (since \( \lambda \subseteq \omega \) holds if and only if \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \)). Thus, \( s_{\omega/\lambda} = 0 \). Comparing this with

\[
\sum_{\nu \text{ is a partition}} \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \lambda \in P_{k,n} \text{ and } \nu = \lambda^\vee; \\ 0, & \text{else} \end{cases} s_{\nu} = 0, \quad (\text{since } \lambda \notin P_{k,n})
\]

we obtain

\[
s_{\omega/\lambda} = \sum_{\nu \text{ is a partition}} \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \lambda \in P_{k,n} \text{ and } \nu = \lambda^\vee; \\ 0, & \text{else} \end{cases} s_{\nu}. \]

Thus, (70) is proven in Case 2.

We have now proved (70) in each of the two Cases 1 and 2. Thus, (70) always holds.

Now, comparing (70) with (69), we obtain

\[
\sum_{\nu \text{ is a partition}} c_{\lambda,\nu} s_{\nu} = \sum_{\nu \text{ is a partition}} \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \lambda \in P_{k,n} \text{ and } \nu = \lambda^\vee; \\ 0, & \text{else} \end{cases} s_{\nu}. \]

Since the family \((s_{\nu})_{\nu}\) is a basis of the \(k\)-module \(\Lambda\), we can compare the coefficients of \(s_{\mu}\) on both sides of this equality. We thus obtain

\[
c_{\lambda,\mu}^\omega = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \lambda \in P_{k,n} \text{ and } \mu = \lambda^\vee; \\ 0, & \text{else} \end{cases}.
\]

This proves Corollary 8.10.

### 8.2. Another proof of Theorem 6.3

We are now ready to prove Theorem 6.3 again. More precisely, we shall prove Lemma 6.22 (as we know that Theorem 6.3 quickly follows from Lemma 6.22).

**Second proof of Lemma 6.22** If \( k = 0 \), then Lemma 6.22 holds\(^2\). Hence, for the rest of this proof, we WLOG assume that \( k \neq 0 \). Thus, \( k > 0 \). Hence, \( \omega_1 = 0 \).

\(^2\)Proof. Assume that \( k = 0 \). Then, \( P_{k,n} = \{ \varnothing \} \), so that \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} = \{ \varnothing \} \) and thus \( \lambda = \varnothing \). Similarly, \( \mu = \varnothing \). Therefore, \( \lambda = \mu^\vee \) holds. Also, \( \omega = \varnothing \). Moreover, from \( \lambda = \varnothing \), we obtain \( s_\lambda = s_{\varnothing} = 1 \); similarly, \( s_\mu = 1 \). Thus, \( s_\lambda s_\mu = 1 = s_{\varnothing} = s_\omega \) (since \( \varnothing = \omega \)). Hence,

\[
\text{coeff}_\omega (s_\lambda s_\mu) = \text{coeff}_\omega (s_\omega) = 1. \]

Comparing this with

\[
\begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \lambda = \mu^\vee; \\ 0, & \text{if } \lambda \neq \mu^\vee \end{cases} = 1 \quad (\text{since } \lambda = \mu^\vee)
\]

holds, we obtain \( \text{coeff}_\omega (s_\lambda s_\mu) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \lambda = \mu^\vee; \\ 0, & \text{if } \lambda \neq \mu^\vee \end{cases} \). Thus, Lemma 6.22 holds. Qed.
\( n - k \leq 2 (n - k) \). Thus, \( \omega \) is a partition \( \rho \) with at most \( k \) parts that satisfies \( \rho_1 \leq 2 (n - k) \) (since \( \omega_1 \leq 2 (n - k) \)).

Corollary 8.8 yields

\[
S_\lambda S_\mu = \sum_{\rho \text{ is a partition with at most } k \text{ parts; } \rho_1 \leq 2(n - k)} c_{\lambda,\mu}^\rho S_\rho.
\]

Thus,

\[
S_\lambda S_\mu = \sum_{\rho \text{ is a partition with at most } k \text{ parts; } \rho_1 \leq 2(n - k)} c_{\lambda,\mu}^\rho S_\rho = \sum_{\rho \text{ is a partition with at most } k \text{ parts; } \rho_1 \leq 2(n - k)} c_{\lambda,\mu}^\rho S_\rho.
\]

Hence,

\[
\text{coeff}_{\omega} (S_\lambda S_\mu) = \text{coeff}_{\omega} \left( \sum_{\rho \text{ is a partition with at most } k \text{ parts; } \rho_1 \leq 2(n - k)} c_{\lambda,\mu}^\rho S_\rho \right)
\]

\[
= \sum_{\rho \text{ is a partition with at most } k \text{ parts; } \rho_1 \leq 2(n - k)} c_{\lambda,\mu}^\rho \text{coeff}_{\omega} (S_\rho)
\]

\[
= c_{\lambda,\mu}^\omega \text{coeff}_{\omega} (S_\omega) + \sum_{\rho \text{ is a partition with at most } k \text{ parts; } \rho_1 \leq 2(n - k); \rho \neq \omega} c_{\lambda,\mu}^\rho \text{coeff}_{\omega} (S_\rho)
\]

(by Theorem 7.31 applied to \( \rho \) instead of \( \lambda \))

\[
= c_{\lambda,\mu}^\omega \text{coeff}_{\omega} (S_\omega)
\]

(by the definition of \( \text{coeff}_{\omega} \))

\[
= c_{\lambda,\mu}^\omega = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \lambda \in P_{k,n} \text{ and } \mu = \lambda^\vee; \\ 0, & \text{else} \end{cases}
\]

(by Corollary 8.10)

\[
= \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \mu = \lambda^\vee; \\ 0, & \text{if } \mu \neq \lambda^\vee \end{cases}
\]

(since \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \) holds)

\[
= \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \lambda = \mu^\vee; \\ 0, & \text{if } \lambda \neq \mu^\vee \end{cases}
\]

(since \( \mu = \lambda^\vee \) holds if and only if \( \lambda = \mu^\vee \)). Thus, Lemma 6.22 is proven again. \( \square \)
9. The $h$-basis and the $m$-basis

**Convention 9.1.** For the rest of Section 9 we assume that $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k$ belong to $S$.

### 9.1. A lemma on the $s$-basis

For future use, we shall show a technical lemma, which improves on Lemma 5.13:

**Lemma 9.2.** Let $N \in \mathbb{N}$. Let $f \in S$ be a symmetric polynomial of degree $< N$. Then, in $S/I$, we have

$$f \in \sum_{\kappa \in P_{k,n}; |\kappa| < N} k s_\kappa.$$

**Proof of Lemma 9.2.** We shall prove Lemma 9.2 by strong induction on $N$. Thus, we fix some $M \in \mathbb{N}$, and we assume (as the induction hypothesis) that Lemma 9.2 holds whenever $N < M$. We now must prove that Lemma 9.2 holds for $N = M$.

Let $f \in S$ be a symmetric polynomial of degree $< M$. Then, in $S/I$, we shall show that $f \in \sum_{\kappa \in P_{k,n}; |\kappa| < M} k s_\kappa$.

Indeed, let $U$ be the $k$-submodule $\sum_{\kappa \in P_{k,n}; |\kappa| < M} k s_\kappa$ of $S/I$. Hence, $U$ is the $k$-submodule of $S/I$ spanned by the family $(s_\kappa)_{\kappa \in P_{k,n}; |\kappa| < M}$. Hence,

$$s_\kappa \in U \quad \text{for each } \kappa \in P_{k,n} \text{ satisfying } |\kappa| < M. \quad (71)$$

We are going to show that $\bar{f} = \sum_{\kappa \in P_{k,n}; |\kappa| < M} k s_\kappa$.

Lemma 5.12 (applied to $N = M$) shows that there exists a family $(c_\kappa)_{\kappa \in P_k; |\kappa| < M}$ of elements of $k$ such that $f = \sum_{\kappa \in P_k; |\kappa| < M} c_\kappa s_\kappa$. Consider this family. Thus,

$$f = \sum_{\kappa \in P_k; |\kappa| < M} c_\kappa s_\kappa = \sum_{\mu \in P_k; |\mu| < M} c_\mu s_\mu \quad (72)$$

(here, we have renamed the summation index $\kappa$ as $\mu$).

Now, let $\mu \in P_k$ satisfy $|\mu| < M$. We shall show that $\bar{s_\mu} \in U$.

**Proof:** If $\mu \in P_{k,n}$, then this follows directly from (71) (applied to $\kappa = \mu$). Hence, for the rest of this proof, we WLOG assume that $\mu \notin P_{k,n}$. Thus, Lemma 5.11 (applied to $\mu$ instead of $\lambda$) shows that

$$s_\mu \equiv \text{(some symmetric polynomial of degree } < |\mu|) \text{ mod } I.$$
In other words, there exists a symmetric polynomial \( g \in S \) of degree \(< |\mu| \) such that \( s_\mu \equiv g \mod I \). Consider this \( g \). We have \( |\mu| < M \). Hence, Lemma 9.2 holds for \( N = |\mu| \) (by our induction hypothesis). Thus, we can apply Lemma 9.2 to \( g \) and \( |\mu| \) instead of \( f \) and \( N \). We thus conclude that

\[
\overline{g} \in \sum_{\kappa \in P_k; |\kappa| < |\mu|} k\overline{\kappa}.
\]

But from \( s_\mu \equiv g \mod I \), we obtain

\[
\overline{s_\mu} = \overline{g} \in \sum_{\kappa \in P_k; |\kappa| < |\mu|} k\overline{\kappa} \subseteq \sum_{\kappa \in P_k; |\kappa| < M} k\overline{\kappa}
\]

(since each \( \kappa \in P_k \) satisfying \( |\kappa| < |\mu| \) must also satisfy \( |\kappa| < M \) (because \( |\kappa| < |\mu| < M \)), and therefore the sum \( \sum_{\kappa \in P_k; |\kappa| < |\mu|} k\overline{\kappa} \) is a subsum of the sum \( \sum_{\kappa \in P_k; |\kappa| < M} k\overline{\kappa} \).

Hence,

\[
\overline{s_\mu} \in \sum_{\kappa \in P_k; |\kappa| < M} k\overline{\kappa} \subseteq U \quad \text{(since } U \text{ is defined as } \sum_{\kappa \in P_k; |\kappa| < M} k\overline{\kappa})
\]

qed.

Forget that we fixed \( \mu \). We thus have shown that

\[
\overline{s_\mu} \in U \quad \text{for each } \mu \in P_k \text{ satisfying } |\mu| < M. \quad \text{(73)}
\]

Now, (72) yields

\[
\overline{f} = \sum_{\mu \in P_k; |\mu| < M} c_\mu s_\mu = \sum_{\mu \in P_k; |\mu| < M} c_\mu \overline{s_\mu} \in \sum_{\mu \in P_k; |\mu| < M} c_\mu U \subseteq U
\]

(by (73))

(since \( U \) is a \( k \)-module).

Forget that we fixed \( f \). We thus have shown that if \( f \in S \) is a symmetric polynomial of degree \(< M \), then \( \overline{f} \in \sum_{\kappa \in P_k; |\kappa| < M} k\overline{\kappa} \). In other words, Lemma 9.2 holds for \( N = M \). This completes the induction step. Hence, Lemma 9.2 is proven by induction.

9.2. The \( h \)-basis

In Theorem 7.13, we have shown that the family \( \left( h_\lambda \right)_{\lambda \in P_{kn}} \) is a basis of the \( k \)-module \( S/I \) under the condition that \( a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k \in k \). We shall soon prove this
again, this time under the weaker condition that $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k \in S$. The vehicle of
the proof will be a triangularity property for the change-of-basis matrix between
the bases $(\overline{h}_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ and $(\overline{s}_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ of $S/I$. We refer to [GriRei20] Definition
11.1.16(c)] for the concepts that we shall be using. The triangularity is defined
with respect to a certain partial order on the set $P_{k,n}$:

**Definition 9.3.** We define a binary relation $\geq^*$ on the set $P_{k,n}$ as follows: For
two partitions $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$ and $\mu \in P_{k,n}$, we set $\lambda \geq^* \mu$ if and only if

- **either** $|\lambda| > |\mu|
- **or** $|\lambda| = |\mu|$ and $\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_i \leq \mu_1 + \mu_2 + \cdots + \mu_i$ for all $i \geq 1$.

It is clear that this relation $\geq^*$ is the greater-or-equal relation of a partial
order on $P_{k,n}$. This order will be called the **size-then-antidominance order**.

Note that the condition “$|\lambda| = |\mu|$ and $\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_i \leq \mu_1 + \mu_2 + \cdots + \mu_i$
for all $i \geq 1$” in **Definition 9.3** can also be restated as “$\mu \triangleright \lambda$”, where $\triangleright$
means the dominance relation (defined in **Definition 8.2** (b)). Indeed, this follows easily
from Remark **8.3** (applied to $\mu$ and $\lambda$ instead of $\lambda$ and $\mu$).

For future reference, we need two simple criteria for the $\geq^*$ relation:

**Remark 9.4.** Let $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$ and $\mu \in P_{k,n}$.

(a) If $|\lambda| > |\mu|$, then $\lambda \geq^* \mu$.

(b) Let $a \in \mathbb{N}$. If both $\lambda$ and $\mu$ are partitions of size $a$ and satisfy $\mu \triangleright \lambda$, then
$\lambda \geq^* \mu$. (See **Definition 8.2** (b) for the meaning of “$\triangleright$”.)

**Proof of Remark 9.4.** (a) This follows immediately from the definition of the relation
$\geq^*$.

(b) Assume that both $\lambda$ and $\mu$ are partitions of size $a$ and satisfy $\mu \triangleright \lambda$. Now,
both partitions $\lambda$ and $\mu$ have size $a$; in other words, $|\lambda| = a$ and $|\mu| = a$. Hence,$
|\lambda| = a = |\mu|$.

We have $\mu \triangleright \lambda$. In other words, we have

$$\mu_1 + \mu_2 + \cdots + \mu_i \geq \lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_i$$

for each $i \geq 1$

(by **Remark 8.3**, applied to $\mu$ and $\lambda$ instead of $\lambda$ and $\mu$). In other words, $\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_i \leq \mu_1 + \mu_2 + \cdots + \mu_i$ for all $i \geq 1$. Hence, we have $|\lambda| = |\mu|$ and
$\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_i \leq \mu_1 + \mu_2 + \cdots + \mu_i$ for all $i \geq 1$. Therefore, $\lambda \geq^* \mu$ (by the
definition of the relation $\geq^*$). This proves **Remark 9.4** (b). \qed

Now, we can put the size-then-antidominance order to use. Recall that **Theorem 2.7**
yields that the family $(\overline{s}_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ is a basis of the $k$-module $S/I$. 

---

72
Theorem 9.5. The family \( \{ \overline{h}_\lambda \}_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}} \) expands unitriangularly in the family \( \{ \overline{s}_\lambda \}_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}} \). Here, the word “expands unitriangularly” is understood according to [GriRei20, Definition 11.1.16(c)], with the poset structure on \( P_{k,n} \) being given by the size-then-antidominance order.

Example 9.6. For this example, let \( n = 5 \) and \( k = 3 \). Assume that \( a_1, a_2 \in \mathbb{k} \). Then, the expansion of the \( \overline{h}_\lambda \) in the basis \( \{ \overline{s}_\lambda \}_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}} \) looks as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
\overline{h}_{\emptyset} &= \overline{s}_{\emptyset}, \\
\overline{h}_{(1)} &= \overline{s}_{(1)}, \\
\overline{h}_{(2)} &= \overline{s}_{(2)}, \\
\overline{h}_{(1,1)} &= \overline{s}_{(2)} + \overline{s}_{(1,1)}, \\
\overline{h}_{(2,1)} &= a_1 \overline{s}_{(1)} + \overline{s}_{(2,1)}, \\
\overline{h}_{(1,1,1)} &= a_1 \overline{s}_{(1)} + \overline{s}_{(1,1)} + 2 \overline{s}_{(2,1)}, \\
\overline{h}_{(2,2)} &= a_1 \overline{s}_{(1)} + \overline{s}_{(2,2)}, \\
\overline{h}_{(2,1,1)} &= -a_2 \overline{s}_{\emptyset} + 2a_1 \overline{s}_{(1)} + \overline{s}_{(1,1,1)} + \overline{s}_{(2,2)}, \\
\overline{h}_{(2,2,1)} &= -a_2 \overline{s}_{(1)} + a_1 \overline{s}_{(1,1)} + 2a_1 \overline{s}_{(2)} + \overline{s}_{(2,2,1)}, \\
\overline{h}_{(2,2,2)} &= a_1^2 \overline{s}_{\emptyset} - a_2 \overline{s}_{(1,1)} + 2a_1 \overline{s}_{(2,1)} + \overline{s}_{(2,2,2)}.
\end{align*}
\]

These equalities hold for arbitrary \( a_1, a_2 \in \mathbb{S} \), not only for \( a_1, a_2 \in \mathbb{k} \); but in the general case they are not expansions in the basis \( \{ \overline{s}_\lambda \}_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}} \), since \( a_1, a_2 \) themselves can be expanded further.

Our proof of Theorem 9.5 will use the concept of Kostka numbers. Let us recall their definition:

**Definition 9.7.** (a) See [GriRei20, §2.2] for the definition of a column-strict tableau of shape \( \lambda \) (where \( \lambda \) is a partition), and also for a definition of \( \text{cont} (T) \) where \( T \) is such a tableau.

(b) Let \( \lambda \) and \( \mu \) be two partitions. Then, the Kostka number \( K_{\lambda, \mu} \) is defined to be the number of all column-strict tableaux \( T \) of shape \( \lambda \) having \( \text{cont} (T) = \mu \).

This definition of \( K_{\lambda, \mu} \) is a particular case of the definition of \( K_{\lambda, \mu} \) in [GriRei20, Exercise 2.2.13].

We shall use the following properties of Kostka numbers:

**Lemma 9.8.** (a) If \( a \in \mathbb{N} \), then we have \( K_{\lambda, \mu} = 0 \) for any partitions \( \lambda \in \text{Par}_a \) and \( \mu \in \text{Par}_a \) that don’t satisfy \( \lambda \triangleright \mu \).

(b) If \( a \in \mathbb{N} \), then we have \( K_{\lambda, \lambda} = 1 \) for any \( \lambda \in \text{Par}_a \).

(c) If \( \lambda \) and \( \mu \) are two partitions such that \( |\lambda| \neq |\mu| \), then \( K_{\lambda, \mu} = 0 \).
(d) For any partition \( \mu \), we have

\[
h_\mu = \sum_{\lambda \in \text{Par}} K_{\lambda,\mu} s_\lambda
\]

where \( \text{Par} \) denotes the set of all partitions.

(e) For any \( a \in \mathbb{N} \) and any \( \lambda \in \text{Par}_a \), we have

\[
h_\lambda = \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}_a} K_{\mu,\lambda} s_\mu.
\]

(f) For any \( a \in \mathbb{N} \) and any \( \lambda \in \text{Par}_a \), we have

\[
h_\lambda = \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}_a \setminus \text{Par}_a \setminus \text{Par}_a} K_{\mu,\lambda} s_\mu.
\]

Proof of Lemma 9.8 (a) This is [GriRei20, Exercise 2.2.13(d)], applied to \( a \) instead of \( n \).

(b) This is [GriRei20, Exercise 2.2.13(e)], applied to \( a \) instead of \( n \).

(c) Let \( \lambda \) and \( \mu \) be two partitions such that \( |\lambda| \neq |\mu| \). Let \( T \) be a column-strict tableau of shape \( \lambda \) having \( \text{cont} \( T \) = \mu \). We shall derive a contradiction.

Indeed, the tableau \( T \) has shape \( \lambda \), and thus has \( |\lambda| \) many cells. Hence,

\[
|\lambda| = (\text{the number of cells of } T) = (\text{the number of entries of } T)
= |\text{cont}(T)| = |\mu| \quad \text{(since } \text{cont}(T) = \mu)\).
\]

This contradicts \( |\lambda| \neq |\mu| \).

Now, forget that we fixed \( T \). We thus have found a contradiction whenever \( T \) is a column-strict tableau of shape \( \lambda \) having \( \text{cont}(T) = \mu \). Hence, there exist no such tableau. In other words, the number of such tableaux is 0. In other words, \( K_{\lambda,\mu} = 0 \) (since \( K_{\lambda,\mu} \) is defined to be the number of such tableaux). This proves Lemma 9.8 (c).

(d) This is [GriRei20, Exercise 2.7.10(a)].

(e) Let \( \text{Par} \) denote the set of all partitions. Then, Lemma 9.8 (d) yields that

\[
h_\mu = \sum_{\lambda \in \text{Par}} K_{\lambda,\mu} s_\lambda
\]

for any partition \( \mu \).

Hence, for any partition \( \mu \), we have

\[
h_\mu = \sum_{\lambda \in \text{Par}} K_{\lambda,\mu} s_\lambda = \sum_{\lambda \in \text{Par}; |\lambda| = |\mu|} K_{\lambda,\mu} s_\lambda + \sum_{\lambda \in \text{Par}; |\lambda| \neq |\mu|} K_{\lambda,\mu} s_\lambda
= \sum_{\lambda \in \text{Par}; |\lambda| = |\mu|} K_{\lambda,\mu} s_\lambda + \sum_{\lambda \in \text{Par}; |\lambda| \neq |\mu|} 0 s_\lambda = \sum_{\lambda \in \text{Par}; |\lambda| = |\mu|} K_{\lambda,\mu} s_\lambda.
\]
Renaming \( \mu \) and \( \lambda \) as \( \lambda \) and \( \mu \) in this equality, we obtain the following: For any partition \( \lambda \), we have

\[
h_\lambda = \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}; |\mu| = |\lambda|} K_{\mu, \lambda} s_\mu \quad \text{for any partition } \lambda. \tag{74}
\]

Now, let \( a \in \mathbb{N} \) and \( \lambda \in \text{Par}_a \). Then, \(|\lambda| = a\). Now, (74) becomes

\[
\sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}; |\mu| = a} K_{\mu, \lambda} s_\mu = \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}; |\mu| > a} K_{\mu, \lambda} s_\mu = \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}_a} K_{\mu, \lambda} s_\mu.
\]

This proves Lemma 9.8 (e).

(f) Let \( a \in \mathbb{N} \) and \( \lambda \in \text{Par}_a \). Lemma 9.8 (e) yields \( h_\lambda = \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}_a} K_{\mu, \lambda} s_\mu \). This is an identity in \( \Lambda \). Evaluating both of its sides at the \( k \) variables \( x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k \), we obtain

\[
\sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}_a; \mu \text{ has at most } k \text{ parts}} K_{\mu, \lambda} s_\mu + \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}_a; \mu \text{ has more than } k \text{ parts}} K_{\mu, \lambda} s_\mu = \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}_a; \mu \text{ has more than } k \text{ parts}} K_{\mu, \lambda} s_\mu = 0 \quad \text{(by (74), applied to } \mu \text{ instead of } \lambda).
\]

This proves Lemma 9.8 (f).

\[ \square \]

**Proof of Theorem 9.5.** Let \( <^* \) denote the smaller relation of the size-then-antidominance order on \( P_{k,n} \). Thus, two partitions \( \lambda \) and \( \mu \) satisfy \( \mu <^* \lambda \) if and only if \( \mu \neq \lambda \) and \( \lambda \geq^* \mu \).

Our goal is to show that the family \( \{ h_\lambda \}_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}} \) expands unitriangularly in the family \( \{ s_\lambda \}_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}} \). In other words, our goal is to show that each \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \) satisfies

\[
\overline{h}_\lambda = \overline{s}_\lambda + (a \text{ k-linear combination of the elements } \overline{s}_\mu \text{ for } \mu \in P_{k,n} \text{ satisfying } \mu <^* \lambda) \tag{75}
\]

(because [GriRei20, Remark 11.1.17(c)] shows that the family \( \{ h_\lambda \}_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}} \) expands unitriangularly in the family \( \{ s_\lambda \}_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}} \) if and only if every \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \) satisfies (75)). So let us prove (75).
Fix $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$. Define $a \in \mathbb{N}$ by $a = |\lambda|$. Thus, $\lambda \in \text{Par}_a$. Hence, Lemma 9.8 (f) yields

$$h_\lambda = \sum_{\mu \in P_k; \mu \in \text{Par}_a} K_{\mu,\lambda} s_\mu = K_{\lambda,\lambda} s_\lambda + \sum_{\substack{\mu \in P_k; \\ \mu \in \text{Par}_a; \\ \mu \neq \lambda}} K_{\mu,\lambda} s_\mu$$  \hspace{1cm} (76)

(here, we have split off the addend for $\mu = \lambda$, since $\lambda \in P_{k,n} \subseteq P_k$ and $\lambda \in \text{Par}_a$).

Now, let $M$ be the $k$-submodule of $S/I$ spanned by the elements $\overline{s_\mu}$ for $\mu \in P_{k,n}$ satisfying $\mu <^* \lambda$. Thus, we have

$$\overline{s_\mu} \in M \quad \text{for each } \mu \in P_{k,n} \text{ satisfying } \mu <^* \lambda.$$ \hspace{1cm} (77)

Also, $0 \in M$ (since $M$ is a $k$-submodule of $S/I$).

We shall next show that

$$K_{\mu,\lambda} \overline{s_\mu} \in M \quad \text{for each } \mu \in P_k \text{ satisfying } \mu \in \text{Par}_a \text{ and } \mu \neq \lambda.$$ \hspace{1cm} (78)

[Proof of (78): Let $\mu \in P_k$ be such that $\mu \in \text{Par}_a$ and $\mu \neq \lambda$. We must prove that $K_{\mu,\lambda} \overline{s_\mu} \in M$.

If $K_{\mu,\lambda} = 0$, then this follows immediately from $K_{\mu,\lambda} \overline{s_\mu} = 0 \overline{s_\mu} = 0 \in M$. Hence, $\mu \in P_{k,n}$

for the rest of this proof, we WLOG assume that $K_{\mu,\lambda} \neq 0$.

If $\mu$ and $\lambda$ would not satisfy $\mu > \lambda$, then we would have $K_{\mu,\lambda} = 0$ (by Lemma 9.8 (a), applied to $\mu$ and $\lambda$ instead of $\lambda$ and $\mu$), which would contradict $K_{\mu,\lambda} \neq 0$. Hence, $\mu$ and $\lambda$ must satisfy $\mu > \lambda$. Both $\lambda$ and $\mu$ are partitions of size $a$ (since $\lambda \in \text{Par}_a$ and $\mu \in \text{Par}_a$). Thus, $|\lambda| = a$ and $|\mu| = a$.

Now, we are in one of the following two cases:

Case 1: We have $\mu \in P_{k,n}$.

Case 2: We have $\mu \notin P_{k,n}$.

Let us first consider Case 1. In this case, we have $\mu \in P_{k,n}$. Thus, $\lambda \geq^* \mu$ (by Remark 9.4 (b)) and thus $\mu <^* \lambda$ (since $\mu \neq \lambda$). Hence, (77) shows that $\overline{s_\mu} \in M$. Thus, $K_{\mu,\lambda} \overline{s_\mu} \in K_{\mu,\lambda} M \subseteq M$ (since $M$ is a $k$-submodule of $S/I$). Thus, (78) is proven in Case 1.

Let us next consider Case 2. In this case, we have $\mu \notin P_{k,n}$. Hence, Lemma 5.11 (applied to $\mu$ instead of $\lambda$) shows that

$$s_\mu \equiv (\text{some symmetric polynomial of degree } < |\mu|) \mod I.$$

In other words, there exists some symmetric polynomial $f \in S$ of degree $< |\mu|$ such that $s_\mu \equiv f \mod I$. Consider this $f$. Lemma 9.2 (applied to $N = |\mu|$) yields that in $S/I$, we have

$$f \in \sum_{\substack{k \in P_{k,n}; \\ |k| < |\mu|}} k \overline{s_k}.$$ \hspace{1cm} (79)
Now, let $\kappa \in P_{k,n}$ be such that $|\kappa| < |\mu|$. Then, $|\kappa| < |\mu| = a = |\lambda|$, so that $|\lambda| > |\kappa|$. Thus, Remark 9.4 (a) (applied to $\kappa$ instead of $\mu$) yields $\lambda \geq^* \kappa$. Also, $|\kappa| \neq |\lambda|$ (since $|\kappa| < |\lambda|$) and thus $\kappa \neq \lambda$. Combining this with $\lambda \geq^* \kappa$, we obtain $\kappa <^* \lambda$. Hence, (77) (applied to $\kappa$ instead of $\mu$) yields $\overline{s}_\kappa \in M$. Hence, $\kappa \overline{\overline{s}_\kappa} \subseteq kM \subseteq M$ (since $M$ is a $k$-module).

Forget that we fixed $\kappa$. We thus have shown that $k\overline{s}_\kappa \subseteq M$ for each $\kappa \in P_{k,n}$ satisfying $|\kappa| < |\mu|$. Hence, $\sum_{\kappa \in P_{k,n}; |\kappa| < |\mu|} k\overline{s}_\kappa \subseteq \sum_{\kappa \in P_{k,n}; |\kappa| < |\mu|} M \subseteq M$ (since $M$ is a $k$-module).

Thus, (79) becomes $\overline{f} \in \sum_{\kappa \in P_{k,n}; |\kappa| < |\mu|} k\overline{s}_\kappa = M$. But $s_\mu \equiv f \mod I$ and thus $\overline{s}_\mu = \overline{f} \in M$.

Thus, $K_{\mu,\lambda} \overline{s}_\mu \in K_{\mu,\lambda} M \subseteq M$ (since $M$ is a $k$-submodule of $S/I$). Hence, (78) is proven in Case 2.

We have now proven (78) in both Cases 1 and 2. Hence, (78) always holds.]

Now, from (76), we obtain

$$
\overline{h}_\lambda = K_{\lambda,\lambda} \overline{s}_\lambda + \sum_{\mu \in P_k; \mu \in \text{Par}_\lambda; \mu \neq \lambda} K_{\mu,\lambda} \overline{s}_\mu = K_{\lambda,\lambda} \overline{s}_\lambda + \sum_{\mu \in P_k; \mu \in \text{Par}_\lambda; \mu \neq \lambda} K_{\mu,\lambda} \overline{s}_\mu \quad (\text{by Lemma 9.8(b)})
$$

$$
\in \overline{s}_\lambda + \sum_{\mu \in P_k; \mu \in \text{Par}_\lambda; \mu \neq \lambda} M \subseteq \overline{s}_\lambda + M.
$$

(since $M$ is a $k$-module)

In other words, $\overline{h}_\lambda - \overline{s}_\lambda \in M$. In other words, $\overline{h}_\lambda - \overline{s}_\lambda$ is a $k$-linear combination of the elements $\overline{s}_\mu$ for $\mu \in P_{k,n}$ satisfying $\mu <^* \lambda$ (since $M$ was defined as the $k$-submodule of $S/I$ spanned by these elements). In other words,

$$
\overline{h}_\lambda = \overline{s}_\lambda + (\text{a } k\text{-linear combination of the elements } \overline{s}_\mu \text{ for } \mu \in P_{k,n} \text{ satisfying } \mu <^* \lambda).
$$

Thus, (75) is proven. As we already have explained, this completes the proof of Theorem 9.5.

We can now prove Theorem 7.13 again. Better yet, we can prove the following more general fact:

**Theorem 9.9.** The family $\left(\overline{h}_\lambda\right)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ is a basis of the $k$-module $S/I$.

Theorem 9.9 makes the exact same claim as Theorem 7.13 but is nevertheless more general because we have stated it in a more general context (namely, $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k \in S$ rather than $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k \in k$).
Proof of Theorem 9.9. Consider the finite set $P_{k,n}$ as a poset (using the size-then-antidominance order).

Theorem 9.5 says that the family $(h_{\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ expands unitriangularly in the family $(\bar{s}_{\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$. Hence, the family $(h_{\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ expands invertibly triangularly in the family $(\bar{s}_{\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$. Thus, [GriRei20, Corollary 11.1.19(e)] (applied to $S/I$, $P_{k,n}$, $(h_{\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ and $(\bar{s}_{\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ instead of $M$, $S$, $(e_s)_{s \in S}$ and $(f_s)_{s \in S}$) shows that the family $(h_{\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ is a basis of the $k$-module $S/I$ if and only if the family $(\bar{s}_{\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ is a basis of the $k$-module $S/I$. Hence, the family $(h_{\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ is a basis of the $k$-module $S/I$ (since the family $(\bar{s}_{\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ is a basis of the $k$-module $S/I$). Thus, Theorem 9.9 is proven. (And therefore, Theorem 7.13 is proven again.) $\square$

9.3. The $m$-basis

Next, we recall another well-known family of symmetric polynomials:

Definition 9.10. For any partition $\lambda$, we let $m_{\lambda}$ denote the monomial symmetric polynomial in $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k$ corresponding to the partition $\lambda$. This monomial symmetric polynomial is what is called $m_{\lambda}(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k)$ in [GriRei20, Chapter 2]. Note that

$$m_{\lambda} = 0 \quad \text{if } \lambda \text{ has more than } k \text{ parts.} \quad (80)$$

If $\lambda$ is any partition, then the monomial symmetric polynomial $m_{\lambda} = m_{\lambda}(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k)$ is symmetric and thus belongs to $S$.

We now claim the following:

Theorem 9.11. The family $(m_{\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ is a basis of the $k$-module $S/I$.

We shall prove this further below; a different proof has been given in by Weinfeld in [Weinfe19, Corollary 6.2].

Our proof of Theorem 9.11 will again rely on the concept of unitriangularity and on a partial order on the set $P_{k,n}$. The partial order, this time, is not the size-then-antidominance order, but a simpler one (the “graded dominance order”):

Definition 9.12. We define a binary relation $\geq_*$ on the set $P_{k,n}$ as follows: For two partitions $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$ and $\mu \in P_{k,n}$, we set $\lambda \geq_* \mu$ if and only if

- $|\lambda| = |\mu|$ and $\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_i \geq \mu_1 + \mu_2 + \cdots + \mu_i$ for all $i \geq 1$.

See [GriRei20, Definition 11.1.16(b)] for the meaning of this word.
It is clear that this relation \( \geq_{\ast} \) is the greater-or-equal relation of a partial order on \( P_{k,n} \). This order will be called the graded dominance order.

Note that the condition \( "|\lambda| = |\mu| \) and \( \lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_i \geq \mu_1 + \mu_2 + \cdots + \mu_i \) for all \( i \geq 1 \) in Definition 9.12 can also be restated as \( "\lambda \triangleright \mu" \), where \( \triangleright \) means the dominance relation (defined in Definition 8.2(b)). Indeed, this follows easily from Remark 8.3.

For future reference, we need a simple criterion for the \( \geq_{\ast} \) relation:

**Remark 9.13.** Let \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \) and \( \mu \in P_{k,n} \).

Let \( a \in \mathbb{N} \). If both \( \lambda \) and \( \mu \) are partitions of size \( a \) and satisfy \( \lambda \triangleright \mu \), then \( \lambda \geq_{\ast} \mu \). (See Definition 8.2(b) for the meaning of \( \triangleright \).)

**Proof of Remark 9.13.** Assume that both \( \lambda \) and \( \mu \) are partitions of size \( a \) and satisfy \( \lambda \triangleright \mu \). Now, both partitions \( \lambda \) and \( \mu \) have size \( a \); in other words, \( |\lambda| = a \) and \( |\mu| = a \). Hence, \( |\lambda| = a = |\mu| \).

We have \( \lambda \triangleright \mu \). In other words, we have

\[
\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_i \geq \mu_1 + \mu_2 + \cdots + \mu_i \quad \text{for each } i \geq 1
\]

(by Remark 8.3). Hence, we have \( |\lambda| = |\mu| \) and \( \lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_i \geq \mu_1 + \mu_2 + \cdots + \mu_i \) for all \( i \geq 1 \). Therefore, \( \lambda \geq_{\ast} \mu \) (by the definition of the relation \( \geq_{\ast} \)).

This proves Remark 9.13.

Now, we can put the graded dominance order to use. Recall that Theorem 2.7 yields that the family \( \{s_{\lambda}\}_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}} \) is a basis of the \( k \)-module \( S/I \).

**Theorem 9.14.** The family \( \{s_{\lambda}\}_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}} \) expands untriarally in the family \( \{m_{\lambda}\}_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}} \). Here, the word “expands untriarally” is understood according to [GriRei20, Definition 11.1.16(c)], with the poset structure on \( P_{k,n} \) being given by the graded dominance order.

**Example 9.15.** For this example, let \( n = 5 \) and \( k = 3 \). Then, the expansion of
the \( s_\lambda \) in the basis \((m_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}\) looks as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
    s_{\emptyset} &= m_{\emptyset}; \\
    s_{(1)} &= m_{(1)}; \\
    s_{(2)} &= m_{(1,1)} + m_{(2)}; \\
    s_{(1,1)} &= m_{(1,1)}; \\
    s_{(2,1)} &= 2m_{(1,1,1)} + m_{(2,1)}; \\
    s_{(1,1,1)} &= m_{(1,1,1)}; \\
    s_{(2,2)} &= m_{(2,1,1)} + m_{(2,2)}; \\
    s_{(2,1,1)} &= m_{(2,1,1)}; \\
    s_{(2,2,1)} &= m_{(2,2,1)}; \\
    s_{(2,2,2)} &= m_{(2,2,2)}. 
\end{align*}
\]

The coefficients in these expansions are Kostka numbers; the \( a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k \) do not appear in them. (This will become clear in the proof of Theorem 9.14.)

To prove Theorem 9.14, we shall use the monomial symmetric functions \( m_\lambda \):

- For any partition \( \lambda \), we let \( m_\lambda \) be the corresponding monomial symmetric function in \( \Lambda \). (This is called \( m_\lambda \) in [GriRei20, (2.1.1)].)

We shall furthermore use the following property of the dominance order:

**Lemma 9.16.** Let \( a \in \mathbb{N} \). Let \( \lambda \in \text{Par}_a \) and \( \mu \in \text{Par}_a \) be such that \( \lambda \triangleright \mu \). Assume that \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \) and \( \mu \in P_{k,n} \). Then, \( \mu \in P_{k,n} \).

**Proof of Lemma 9.16.** We have \( \lambda \triangleright \mu \). In other words, we have

\[
\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_i \geq \mu_1 + \mu_2 + \cdots + \mu_i \quad \text{for each } i \geq 1
\]

(by Remark 8.3). Applying this to \( i = 1 \), we obtain \( \lambda_1 \geq \mu_1 \). Hence, \( \mu_1 \leq \lambda_1 \leq n - k \) (since \( \lambda \in P_{k,n} \)). Thus, all parts of the partition \( \mu \) are \( \leq n - k \) (since \( \mu_1 \geq \mu_2 \geq \mu_3 \geq \cdots \)). Hence, \( \mu \in P_{k,n} \) (since \( \mu \in P_k \)). This proves Lemma 9.16.

Also, we shall again use Kostka numbers, specifically their following properties:

**Lemma 9.17.** (a) For any \( a \in \mathbb{N} \) and any \( \lambda \in \text{Par}_a \), we have

\[
s_\lambda = \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}_a} K_{\lambda,\mu} m_\mu.
\]
(b) For any $a \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\lambda \in \text{Par}_a$, we have

$$s_\lambda = \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}_a : \mu \text{ has at most } k \text{ parts}} K_{\lambda, \mu} m_\mu + \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}_a : \mu \text{ has more than } k \text{ parts}} K_{\lambda, \mu} m_\mu = \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}_a} K_{\lambda, \mu} m_\mu.$$ 

(c) For any $a \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\lambda \in \text{Par}_a$ satisfying $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$, we have

$$s_\lambda = \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}_a : \mu \text{ has at most } k \text{ parts}} K_{\lambda, \mu} m_\mu + \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}_a : \mu \text{ has more than } k \text{ parts}} K_{\lambda, \mu} m_\mu = 0.$$ 

Proof of Lemma 9.17

(a) This is [GriRei20, Exercise 2.2.13(c)].

(b) Let $a \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\lambda \in \text{Par}_a$. Lemma 9.17 (a) yields $s_\lambda = \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}_a} K_{\lambda, \mu} m_\mu$. This is an identity in $\Lambda$. Evaluating both of its sides at the $k$ variables $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k$, we obtain

$$s_\lambda = \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}_a} K_{\lambda, \mu} m_\mu = \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}_a} K_{\lambda, \mu} m_\mu + \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}_a : \mu \text{ has more than } k \text{ parts}} K_{\lambda, \mu} m_\mu = 0.$$ 

This proves Lemma 9.17 (b).

(c) Let $a \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\lambda \in \text{Par}_a$ satisfy $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$. Fix some $\mu \in P_k$ such that $\mu \in \text{Par}_a$ and $\mu \notin P_{k,n}$. Then, we don’t have $\lambda \triangleright \mu$ (since otherwise, Lemma 9.16 would yield that $\mu \in P_{k,n}$; but this would contradict $\mu \notin P_{k,n}$). Hence, Lemma 9.8 (a) yields $K_{\lambda, \mu} = 0$.

Forget that we fixed $\mu$. We thus have shown that

$$K_{\lambda, \mu} = 0 \quad \text{for every } \mu \in P_k \text{ satisfying } \mu \in \text{Par}_a \text{ and } \mu \notin P_{k,n}. \quad (81)$$
Now, Lemma 9.17 (b) yields

$$s_\lambda = \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}_a} K_{\lambda, \mu} m_\mu = \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}_a; \mu \in P_{k,n}} K_{\lambda, \mu} m_\mu + \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}_a; \mu \notin P_{k,n}} K_{\lambda, \mu} m_\mu = \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \mu \in \text{Par}_a} K_{\lambda, \mu} m_\mu + \sum_{\mu \in \text{Par}_a; \mu \notin P_{k,n}} 0m_\mu = \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \mu \in \text{Par}_a} K_{\lambda, \mu} m_\mu.$$ (by 81)

This proves Lemma 9.17 (c).

\[\square\]

**Proof of Theorem 9.14** Let $$<_*$$ denote the smaller relation of the graded dominance order on $$P_{k,n}$$. Thus, two partitions $$\lambda$$ and $$\mu$$ satisfy $$\lambda <_* \mu$$ if and only if $$\mu \neq \lambda$$ and $$\lambda \geq_* \mu$$.

Our goal is to show that the family $$(s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$$ expands unitriangularly in the family $$(\overline{m_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$$. In other words, our goal is to show that each $$\lambda \in P_{k,n}$$ satisfies

$$s_\lambda = \overline{m_\lambda} + (\text{a k-linear combination of the elements } \overline{m_\mu} \text{ for } \mu \in P_{k,n} \text{ satisfying } \mu <_* \lambda)$$ (82)

(because [GriRei20, Remark 11.17(c)] shows that the family $$(\overline{m_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$$ expands unitriangularly in the family $$(\overline{m_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$$ if and only if every $$\lambda \in P_{k,n}$$ satisfies (82)). So let us prove (82).

Fix $$\lambda \in P_{k,n}$$. Define $$a \in \mathbb{N}$$ by $$a = |\lambda|$$. Thus, $$\lambda \in \text{Par}_a$$. Hence, Lemma 9.17 (c) yields

$$s_\lambda = \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \mu \in \text{Par}_a} K_{\lambda, \mu} m_\mu = K_{\lambda, \lambda} m_\lambda + \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \mu \in \text{Par}_a; \mu \neq \lambda} K_{\lambda, \mu} m_\mu$$ (83)

(here, we have split off the addend for $$\mu = \lambda$$, since $$\lambda \in P_{k,n}$$ and $$\lambda \in \text{Par}_a$$).

Now, let $$M$$ be the $$k$$-submodule of $$S/I$$ spanned by the elements $$\overline{m_\mu}$$ for $$\mu \in P_{k,n}$$ satisfying $$\mu <_* \lambda$$. Thus, we have

$$\overline{m_\mu} \in M \quad \text{for each } \mu \in P_{k,n} \text{ satisfying } \mu <_* \lambda.$$ (84)

Also, $$0 \in M$$ (since $$M$$ is a $$k$$-submodule of $$S/I$$).

We shall next show that

$$K_{\lambda, \mu} \overline{m_\mu} \in M \quad \text{for each } \mu \in P_{k,n} \text{ satisfying } \mu \in \text{Par}_a \text{ and } \mu \neq \lambda.$$ (85)

[Proof of (85): Let $$\mu \in P_{k,n}$$ be such that $$\mu \in \text{Par}_a$$ and $$\mu \neq \lambda$$. We must prove that $$K_{\lambda, \mu} \overline{m_\mu} \in M.$$]

82
If $K_{\lambda, \mu} = 0$, then this follows immediately from $K_{\lambda, \mu} \overline{m}_\mu = 0 \overline{m}_\mu = 0 \in M$. Hence, for the rest of this proof, we WLOG assume that $K_{\lambda, \mu} \neq 0$.

If $\lambda$ and $\mu$ would not satisfy $\lambda \triangleright \mu$, then we would have $K_{\lambda, \mu} = 0$ (by Lemma 9.8 (a)), which would contradict $K_{\lambda, \mu} \neq 0$. Hence, $\lambda$ and $\mu$ must satisfy $\lambda \triangleright \mu$. Both $\lambda$ and $\mu$ are partitions of size $a$ (since $\lambda \in \Par_a$ and $\mu \in \Par_a$). Thus, $|\lambda| = a$ and $|\mu| = a$. Thus, $\lambda \geq_* \mu$ (by Remark 9.13) and thus $\mu <_* \lambda$ (since $\mu \neq \lambda$).

Hence, (84) shows that $\overline{m}_\mu \in M$. Thus, $K_{\lambda, \mu} \overline{m}_\mu \in K_{\lambda, \mu} M \subseteq M$ (since $M$ is a $k$-submodule of $S/I$). Thus, (85) is proven.

Now, from (83), we obtain

$$\overline{s}_\lambda = K_{\lambda, \lambda} m_\lambda + \sum_{\substack{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \\ \mu \in \Par_a; \\ \mu \neq \lambda}} K_{\lambda, \mu} m_\mu = \overline{m}_\lambda + \sum_{\substack{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \\ \mu \in \Par_a; \\ \mu \neq \lambda}} K_{\lambda, \mu} m_\mu \quad \text{by (83)}$$

$$\in \overline{m}_\lambda + \sum_{\substack{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \\ \mu \in \Par_a; \\ \mu \neq \lambda}} M \quad \subseteq \overline{m}_\lambda + M.$$  

(since $M$ is a $k$-module)

In other words, $\overline{s}_\lambda - \overline{m}_\lambda \in M$. In other words, $\overline{s}_\lambda - \overline{m}_\lambda$ is a $k$-linear combination of the elements $\overline{m}_\mu$ for $\mu \in P_{k,n}$ satisfying $\mu <_* \lambda$ (since $M$ was defined as the $k$-submodule of $S/I$ spanned by these elements). In other words,

$$\overline{s}_\lambda = \overline{m}_\lambda + \left( \text{a } k\text{-linear combination of the elements } \overline{m}_\mu \text{ for } \mu \in P_{k,n} \text{ satisfying } \mu <_* \lambda \right).$$

Thus, (82) is proven. As we already have explained, this completes the proof of Theorem 9.14.

Proof of Theorem 9.11. Consider the finite set $P_{k,n}$ as a poset (using the graded dominance order).

Theorem 9.14 says that the family $(\overline{s}_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ expands unitriangually in the family $(\overline{m}_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$. Hence, the family $(\overline{s}_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ expands invertibly triangularly\(^{23}\) in the family $(\overline{m}_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$. Thus, [GriRei20, Corollary 11.1.19(e)] (applied to $S/I$, $P_{k,n}$, $(\overline{s}_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ and $(\overline{m}_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ instead of $M$, $S$, $(e_s)_{s \in S}$ and $(f_s)_{s \in S}$) shows that the family $(\overline{s}_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ is a basis of the $k$-module $S/I$ if and only if the family $(\overline{m}_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ is a basis of the $k$-module $S/I$. Hence, the family $(\overline{m}_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ is a basis of the $k$-module $S/I$ (since the family $(\overline{s}_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ is a basis of the $k$-module $S/I$). Thus, Theorem 9.11 is proven.

\(^{23}\)See [GriRei20, Definition 11.1.16(b)] for the meaning of this word.
9.4. The $p$-not-basis

What other known families of symmetric functions give rise to bases of $S/I$? Here is an example of a family that does not lead to such a basis (at least not in an obvious way):

**Remark 9.18.** Let $n = 4$ and $k = 2$. Let $a_1, a_2 \in k$. For each partition $\lambda$, let $p_\lambda$ be the corresponding power sum symmetric polynomial, i.e., the $p_\lambda (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k)$ from [GriRei20, Definition 2.2.1]. Then, the family $(p_\lambda)_{\lambda \in \mathcal{P}_{k,n}}$ is not a basis of the $k$-module $S/I$ (unless $k = 0$).

**Proof of Remark 9.18.** Straightforward computations yield the following expansions of the $p_\lambda$ in the basis $(s_\mu)_{\mu \in \mathcal{P}_{k,n}}$ of $S/I$:

\[
\begin{align*}
p_{\emptyset} &= s_{\emptyset}; \\
p_{(1)} &= s_{(1)}; \\
p_{(2)} &= s_{(1,1)} + s_{(2)}; \\
p_{(1,1)} &= s_{(1,1)} + s_{(2)}; \\
p_{(2,1)} &= a_1 s_{\emptyset}; \\
p_{(2,2)} &= 2a_2 s_{\emptyset} - a_1 s_{(1,1)} + 2s_{(1,2)}.
\end{align*}
\]

Thus, $p_{(2,1)} - a_1 p_{\emptyset} = 0$. Hence, the family $(\overline{p_\lambda})_{\lambda \in \mathcal{P}_{k,n}}$ fails to be $k$-linearly independent, and thus cannot be a basis of $S/I$. This proves Remark 9.18.

10. Pieri rules for multiplying by $\overline{h_j}$

**Convention 10.1.** Convention 6.1 remains in place for the whole Section 10. We shall also use all the notations introduced in Section 6.

In this section, we shall explore formulas for expanding products of the form $s_\lambda \overline{h_j}$ in the basis $(\overline{s_\mu})_{\mu \in \mathcal{P}_{k,n}}$. We begin with the simplest case – that of $j = 1$:

10.1. Multiplying by $\overline{h_1}$

**Proposition 10.2.** Let $\lambda \in \mathcal{P}_{k,n}$. Assume that $k > 0$.

(a) If $\lambda_1 < n - k$, then
\[
\overline{s_\lambda h_1} = \sum_{\mu \in \mathcal{P}_{k,n} : \mu / \lambda \text{ is a single box}} \overline{s_\mu}.
\]

(b) Let $\lambda$ be the partition $(\lambda_2, \lambda_3, \lambda_4, \ldots)$. If $\lambda_1 = n - k$, then
\[
\overline{s_\lambda h_1} = \sum_{\mu \in \mathcal{P}_{k,n} : \mu / \lambda \text{ is a single box}} \overline{s_\mu} + \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} (-1)^i a_{1+i} \sum_{\mu \in \mathcal{P}_{k,n} : \lambda / \mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} \overline{s_\mu}.
\]
Proof of Proposition 10.2. We have $h_1 = e_1$, thus

$$s_\lambda h_1 = s_\lambda e_1 = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition;} \mu/\lambda \text{ is a vertical 1-strip}} s_\mu$$

(by Proposition 6.6, applied to $i = 1$). Evaluating both sides of this identity at the $k$ variables $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k$, we find

$$s_\lambda h_1 = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition;} \mu/\lambda \text{ is a vertical 1-strip}} s_\mu = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition;} \mu/\lambda \text{ is a single box}} s_\mu$$

(because a skew diagram $\mu/\lambda$ is a vertical 1-strip if and only if it is a single box).

This becomes

$$s_\lambda h_1 = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition;} \mu/\lambda \text{ is a single box}} s_\mu = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition;} \mu/\lambda \text{ is a single box; } \mu \text{ has at most } k \text{ parts}} s_\mu + \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition;} \mu/\lambda \text{ is a single box; } \mu \text{ has more than } k \text{ parts}} s_\mu \quad \text{(by (3))}$$

$$= \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition;} \mu/\lambda \text{ is a single box; } \mu \text{ has at most } k \text{ parts}} s_\mu$$

(a) Assume that $\lambda_1 < n - k$. Then, each partition $\mu$ satisfying

$$(\mu/\lambda \text{ is a single box}) \land (\mu \text{ has at most } k \text{ parts})$$

must satisfy

$$\mu \in P_{k,n}. \quad (88)$$

[Proof of (88): Let $\mu$ be a partition satisfying (87). We must prove that $\mu \in P_{k,n}$. We have $\mu_1 \leq \lambda_1 + 1$ (since $\mu/\lambda$ is a single box) and thus $\mu_1 \leq \lambda_1 + 1 \leq n - k$ (since $\lambda_1 < n - k$). Hence, each part of $\mu$ is $\leq n - k$ (since $\mu$ is a partition). Thus, $\mu \in P_{k,n}$ (since $\mu$ has at most $k$ parts). This proves (88).]

Now, (86) becomes

$$s_\lambda h_1 = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition;} \mu/\lambda \text{ is a single box; } \mu \text{ has at most } k \text{ parts}} s_\mu$$

(because (88) yields the equality $\sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition;} \mu/\lambda \text{ is a single box; } \mu \text{ has at most } k \text{ parts}} s_\mu = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition;} \mu/\lambda \text{ is a single box}} s_\mu$ of summation signs). Projecting both sides of this equality onto $S/I$, we obtain

$$\overline{s_\lambda h_1} = \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}} \overline{s_\mu} \quad \text{(by (3))}$$

$$= \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}} \overline{s_\mu}.$$
This proves Proposition 10.2 (a).

(b) Assume that \( \lambda_1 = n - k \). Let \( \nu \) be the partition \((\lambda_1 + 1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots)\). Then, \( \nu / \lambda \) is a single box, which lies in the first row. The definition of \( \nu \) yields \( \nu_1 = \lambda_1 + 1 = n - k + 1 \) (since \( \lambda_1 = n - k \)) and thus \( \nu_1 > n - k \); hence, not all parts of \( \nu \) are \( \leq n - k \). Thus, \( \nu \not\in P_{k,n} \).

Clearly, \( \bar{\lambda} \in P_{k,n} \). Hence, if \( i \in \mathbb{N} \), and if \( \mu \) is any partition such that \( \bar{\lambda} / \mu \) is a vertical \( i \)-strip, then \( \mu \in P_{k,n} \) (since \( \mu \subseteq \bar{\lambda} \)). Thus, for each \( i \in \mathbb{N} \), we have the following equality of summation signs:

\[
\sum_{\text{\mu is a partition; } \bar{\lambda} / \mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} = \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n};} \quad \text{(89)}
\]

The partition \( \nu \) has at most \( k \) parts (since \( \lambda \) has at most \( k \) parts, and since \( k > 0 \)). The definition of \( \nu \) yields \( \nu_1 = \lambda_1 + 1 = n - k + 1 \) (since \( \lambda_1 = n - k \)) and \((\nu_2, \nu_3, \nu_4, \ldots) = (\lambda_2, \lambda_3, \lambda_4, \ldots) = \bar{\lambda} \). Hence, Lemma 6.13 (applied to \( \nu \) and \( \nu_i \) instead of \( \lambda \) and \( \lambda_i \)) yields

\[
\sum_{\text{\mu is a partition; } \bar{\lambda} / \mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} a_{1+i} = \sum_{\text{\mu is a partition; } \bar{\lambda} / \mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} (-1)^i a_{1+i} \quad \text{(90)}
\]

(by (89)).

Each partition \( \mu \) satisfying

\[
(\mu / \lambda \text{ is a single box}) \land (\mu \text{ has at most } k \text{ parts}) \land (\mu \neq \nu) \quad \text{(91)}
\]

must satisfy

\[
\mu \in P_{k,n}. \quad \text{(92)}
\]

[Proof of (92): Let \( \mu \) be a partition satisfying (91). We must prove that \( \mu \in P_{k,n} \).

We know that \( \mu / \lambda \) is a single box. If we had \( \mu_1 > \lambda_1 \), then this box would lie in the first row, which would yield that \( \mu = \nu \) (because \( \nu \) is the partition obtained from \( \lambda \) by adding a box in the first row); but this would contradict \( \mu \neq \nu \). Hence, we cannot have \( \mu_1 > \lambda_1 \). Thus, we have \( \mu_1 \leq \lambda_1 = n - k \). Hence, each part of \( \mu \) is \( \leq n - k \) (since \( \mu \) is a partition). Thus, \( \mu \in P_{k,n} \) (since \( \mu \) has at most \( k \) parts).

This proves (92).]

Conversely, each \( \mu \in P_{k,n} \) satisfies \( \mu \neq \nu \) (because \( \nu \not\in P_{k,n} \)) and has at most \( k \) parts. Combining this with (92), we obtain the following equality of summation signs:

\[
\sum_{\text{\mu is a partition; } \mu / \lambda \text{ is a single box; } \mu \text{ has at most } k \text{ parts; } \mu \neq \nu} = \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \mu / \lambda \text{ is a single box}} \quad \text{(93)}
\]
Now, (86) becomes
\[ s_{\lambda} h_1 = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \mu / \lambda \text{ is a single box; } \mu \text{ has at most } k \text{ parts}} s_{\mu} + \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \mu / \lambda \text{ is a single box; } \mu \text{ has at most } k \text{ parts}} s_{\mu} \]

(here, we have split off the addend for \(\mu = \nu\) from the sum (since \(\nu / \lambda\) is a single box, and since \(\nu\) has at most \(k\) parts))
\[ = s_{\nu} + \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \mu / \lambda \text{ is a single box}} s_{\mu} \]  
(by (93)).

Projecting both sides of this equality onto \(S/I\), we obtain
\[ \frac{s_{\lambda} h_1}{s_{\lambda}} = s_{\nu} + \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \mu / \lambda \text{ is a single box}} s_{\mu} \]
\[ = s_{\nu} + \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \mu / \lambda \text{ is a single box}} \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} (-1)^i a_{1+i} s_{\mu} = \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \mu / \lambda \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_{\mu} \]  
(by (90)). This proves Proposition 10.2 (b).

10.2. Multiplying by \(h_{n-k}\)

On the other end of the spectrum is the case of \(j = n - k\); this case also turns out to have a simple answer:

**Proposition 10.3.** Let \(\lambda \in P_{k,n}\). Assume that \(k > 0\).

(a) We have
\[ \frac{s_\lambda h_{n-k}}{s_\lambda} = \frac{s_{(n-k, \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots)}}{s_\lambda} - \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^i a_i \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \lambda / \mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_{\mu}. \]

(b) If \(\lambda_k > 0\), then
\[ \frac{s_\lambda h_{n-k}}{s_\lambda} = -\sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^i a_i \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \lambda / \mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}} s_{\mu}. \]

**Proof of Proposition 10.3** We have \(\lambda \in P_{k,n}\), thus \(\lambda_1 \leq n - k\). Hence, \(n - k \geq \lambda_1\). Thus, \((n - k, \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots)\) is a partition.

(a) We have
\[ (e_i)\perp s_\lambda = 0 \quad \text{for every integer } i > k. \]  
(by 94)
[Proof of (94): Let \( i > k \) be an integer. The partition \( \lambda \) has at most \( k \) parts (since \( \lambda \in \mathcal{P}_{k,n} \)). In other words, the Young diagram of \( \lambda \) contains at most \( k \) rows. Hence, this diagram contains no vertical \( i \)-strip (since a vertical \( i \)-strip would involve more than \( k \) rows (because \( i > k \))). Thus, there exists no partition \( \mu \) such that \( \lambda / \mu \) is a vertical \( i \)-strip. Hence, \( \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \lambda / \mu \text{ is a vertical } i \text{-strip}} s_\mu = (\text{empty sum}) = 0. \]

But Corollary 6.7 yields \( (e_i)^\perp s_\lambda = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \lambda / \mu \text{ is a vertical } i \text{-strip}} s_\mu = 0. \) This proves (94).]

Recall that \( e_0 = 1 \) and thus \( (e_0)^\perp = 1^\perp = \text{id}. \) Hence, \( (e_0)^\perp s_\lambda = \text{id} s_\lambda = s_\lambda. \)

But \( n - k \geq \lambda_1. \) Hence, Proposition 6.8 (applied to \( m = n - k \)) yields

\[
\sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} (-1)^i h_{n-k+i} (e_i)^\perp s_\lambda = s_{(n-k,\lambda_1,\lambda_2,\lambda_3,\ldots)}.
\]

Hence,

\[
s_{(n-k,\lambda_1,\lambda_2,\lambda_3,\ldots)} = \sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} (-1)^i h_{n-k+i} (e_i)^\perp s_\lambda
\]

\[
= \sum_{i=0}^{k} (-1)^i h_{n-k+i} (e_i)^\perp s_\lambda + \sum_{i=k+1}^{\infty} (-1)^i h_{n-k+i} (e_i)^\perp s_\lambda
\]

\[
= \sum_{i=0}^{k} (-1)^i h_{n-k+i} (e_i)^\perp s_\lambda
\]

\[
= (-1)^0 h_{n-k+0} (e_0)^\perp s_\lambda + \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^i h_{n-k+i} (e_i)^\perp s_\lambda = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \lambda / \mu \text{ is a vertical } i \text{-strip}} s_\mu
\]

\[
= h_n s_\lambda + \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^i h_{n-k+i} \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \lambda / \mu \text{ is a vertical } i \text{-strip}} s_\mu
\]

\[
= s_\lambda h_n + \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^i h_{n-k+i} \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \lambda / \mu \text{ is a vertical } i \text{-strip}} s_\mu
\]

so that

\[
s_\lambda h_n - k = s_{(n-k,\lambda_1,\lambda_2,\lambda_3,\ldots)} - \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^i h_{n-k+i} \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \lambda / \mu \text{ is a vertical } i \text{-strip}} s_\mu.
\]

This is an equality in \( \Lambda. \) If we evaluate both of its sides at \( x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k, \) then we...
obtain

\[
s_{\lambda} h_{n-k} = s_{(n-k, \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots)} - \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^i \, h_{n-k+i} \cdot \left( \sum_{\substack{\mu \text{ is a partition;} \\ \lambda/\mu \text{ is a vertical } i\text{-strip}}} s_\mu \right)
\]

(by (15))

\[
\equiv s_{(n-k, \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots)} - \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^i a_i \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}} s_\mu \mod I.
\]

In other words,

\[
\overline{s_{\lambda} h_{n-k}} = s_{(n-k, \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots)} - \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^i a_i \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}} \overline{s_\mu}
\]

\[
\equiv s_{(n-k, \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots)} - \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^i a_i \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}} \overline{s_\mu}.
\]

This proves Proposition 10.3(a).

(b) Assume that \(\lambda_k > 0\). Hence, the partition \((n-k, \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots)\) has more than \(k\) parts (since its \((k+1)\)-st entry is \(\lambda_k > 0\)). Thus, (3) (applied to \((n-k, \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots)\) instead of \(\lambda\)) yields \(s_{(n-k, \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots)} = 0\). Hence, \(s_{(n-k, \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots)} = 0 = 0\). Now, Proposition 10.3(a) yields

\[
\overline{s_{\lambda} h_{n-k}} = \overline{s_{(n-k, \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots)}} = \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^i a_i \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}} \overline{s_\mu}
\]

\[
= - \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^i a_i \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}} \overline{s_\mu}.
\]

This proves Proposition 10.3(b).

10.3. Multiplying by \(\overline{h_j}\)

At last, let us give an explicit expansion for \(\overline{s_{\lambda} h_j}\) in the basis \(\overline{s_\mu}_{\mu \in P_{k,n}}\) that holds for all \(j \in \{0, 1, \ldots, n-k\}\). Before we state it, we need a notation:
**Definition 10.4.** Let $f \in \Lambda$ be any symmetric function. Then, $\bar{f} \in S/I$ is defined to be $\bar{f}$, where $f \in S$ is the result of evaluating the symmetric function $f \in \Lambda$ at the $k$ variables $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k$. Thus, for every partition $\lambda$, we have $\bar{s}_\lambda = s_\lambda$. Likewise, for any $m \in \mathbb{N}$, we have $\bar{h}_m = h_m$ and $\bar{e}_m = e_m$.

**Theorem 10.5.** Let $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$. Let $j \in \{0, 1, \ldots, n - k\}$. Then,

$$\bar{s}_\lambda h_j = \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}^j} \bar{s}_\mu - \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^i a_i \left(s_{(n-k-j+1,1^{i-1})}\right)^\perp s_\lambda.$$

**Example 10.6.** If $n = 7$ and $k = 3$, then

$$s_{(4,3,2)} h_2 = \bar{s}_{(4,4,3)} + a_1 \left(\bar{s}_{(4,2)} + \bar{s}_{(3,2,1)} + \bar{s}_{(3,3)}\right) - a_2 \left(\bar{s}_{(4,1)} + \bar{s}_{(2,2,1)} + \bar{s}_{(3,1,1)} + 2\bar{s}_{(3,2)}\right) + a_3 \left(\bar{s}_{(2,2)} + \bar{s}_{(2,1,1)} + \bar{s}_{(3,1)}\right).$$

It is not hard to reveal Propositions 10.2 and 10.3 as particular cases of Theorem 10.5 (by setting $j = 1$ or $j = n - k$, respectively). Likewise, one can see that Theorem 10.5 generalizes [BeCiFu99, (22)]. Indeed, [BeCiFu99, (22)] says that if $a_1 = a_2 = \cdots = a_{k-1} = 0$, then every $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$ and $j \in \{0, 1, \ldots, n - k\}$ satisfy

$$\bar{s}_\lambda h_j = \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}^j} \bar{s}_\mu - \sum_{\nu \in P_{k,n}} \bar{s}_\nu,$$

where the second sum runs over all $\nu \in P_{k,n}$ satisfying

$$(\lambda_i - 1 \geq \nu_i \text{ for all } i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}) \quad \text{and} \quad (\nu_i \geq \lambda_{i+1} - 1 \text{ for all } i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k-1\}) \quad \text{and} \quad |\nu| = |\lambda| + j - n.$$

Note, however, that the sums in Theorem 10.5 contain multiplicities (see the “$2\bar{s}_{(3,2)}$” in Example 10.6), unlike those in [BeCiFu99, (22)].

We shall prove Theorem 10.5 by deriving it from an identity between genuine symmetric functions (in $\Lambda$, not in $S$ or $S/I$):

**Theorem 10.7.** Let $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$. Let $j \in \{0, 1, \ldots, n - k\}$. Then,

$$s_\lambda h_j = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition;} \atop \mu_1 \leq n-k; \mu/\lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} s_\mu - \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^i h_{n-k+i} \left(s_{(n-k-j+1,1^{i-1})}\right)^\perp s_\lambda.$$
Before we prove this theorem, we need several auxiliary results. First, we recall one of the Pieri rules ([GriRei20, (2.7.1)]):

**Proposition 10.8.** Let $\lambda$ be a partition, and let $i \in \mathbb{N}$. Then,

$$s_\lambda h_i = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \mu / \lambda \text{ is a horizontal } i \text{-strip}} s_\mu.$$ 

From this, we can easily derive the following:

**Corollary 10.9.** Let $\lambda$ be a partition, and let $i \in \mathbb{N}$. Then,

$$\left(\left(h_i\right)^\perp s_\lambda = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \lambda / \mu \text{ is a horizontal } i \text{-strip}} s_\mu.\right.$$ 

Corollary 10.9 is also proven in [GriRei20, (2.8.3)].

Next, let us show some further lemmas:

**Lemma 10.10.** Let $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$. Let $j \in \{0, 1, \ldots, n - k\}$. Let $g$ be a positive integer. Then,

$$\sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \mu_1 = n - k + g; \mu / \lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j \text{-strip}} s_\mu = \sum_{w \geq 1} (-1)^{w-g} h_{n-k+w} (h_{n-k+g-j} e_{w-g})^\perp s_\lambda.$$ 

**Proof of Lemma 10.10 (sketched).** First, we observe that $\lambda_1 \leq n - k$ (since $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$). Now, every partition $\mu$ satisfying $\mu_1 = n - k + g$ must automatically satisfy $\mu_1 \geq \lambda_1$ (because $\mu_1 = n - k + g \geq n - k \geq \lambda_1$).

Let $A$ be the set of all partitions $\mu$ such that $\mu_1 = n - k + g$ and such that $\mu / \lambda$ is a horizontal $j$-strip. Let $B$ be the set of all partitions $\nu$ such that $\lambda / \nu$ is a horizontal $(n - k + g - j)$-strip. Then

$$A = \{\mu \text{ is a partition } | \mu_1 = n - k + g \text{ and } |\mu| - |\lambda| = j \text{ and } \mu_1 \geq \lambda_1 \geq \mu_2 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \mu_3 \geq \lambda_3 \geq \cdots\}$$

$$= \{\mu \text{ is a partition } | \mu_1 = n - k + g \text{ and } |\mu| - |\lambda| = j \text{ and } \lambda_1 \geq \mu_2 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \mu_3 \geq \lambda_3 \geq \mu_4 \geq \cdots\}$$

\[\text{We are using Definition 6.2 (c) here.}\]
A basis for a quotient of symmetric polynomials (draft)  March 18, 2021

(since every partition $\mu$ satisfying $\mu_1 = n - k + g$ must automatically satisfy $\mu_1 \geq \lambda_1$) and

$$B = \{ \nu \text{ is a partition} \mid |\lambda| - |\nu| = n - k + g - j \text{ and } \lambda_1 \geq \nu_1 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \nu_2 \geq \lambda_3 \geq \nu_3 \geq \cdots \}.$$  

Hence, it is easy to check that the map

$$B \to A, \quad \nu \mapsto (n - k + g, \nu_1, \nu_2, \nu_3, \ldots)$$

is well-defined (because every $\nu \in B$ satisfies $\lambda_1 \geq \nu_1$ and thus $n - k + g \geq 0$) and is a bijection (its inverse map just sends each $\mu \in A$ to $(\mu_2, \mu_3, \mu_4, \ldots) \in B$). Thus, we can substitute $(n - k + g, \nu_1, \nu_2, \nu_3, \ldots)$ for $\mu$ in the sum $\sum_{\mu \in A} s_\mu$. We thus obtain

$$\sum_{\mu \in A} s_\mu = \sum_{\nu \in B} s_{(n-k+g, \nu_1, \nu_2, \nu_3, \ldots)}.$$  \hspace{1cm} (95)

But each $\nu \in B$ satisfies $n - k + g \geq 0$ and thus

$$\sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} (-1)^i h_{n-k+g+i}(e_i) \perp s_\nu = 0,$$  \hspace{1cm} (96)

(by Proposition 6.8, applied to $\nu$ and $n - k + g$ instead of $\lambda$ and $m$). Hence, (95) becomes

$$\sum_{\mu \in A} s_\mu = \sum_{\nu \in B} s_{(n-k+g, \nu_1, \nu_2, \nu_3, \ldots)} = \sum_{\nu \in B} \sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} (-1)^i h_{n-k+g+i}(e_i) \perp s_\nu$$

(by (96))

$$= \sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} (-1)^i h_{n-k+g+i}(e_i) \perp \left( \sum_{\nu \in B} s_\nu \right).$$  \hspace{1cm} (97)

But Corollary 10.9 (applied to $i = n - k + g - j$) yields \[25\]

$$(h_{n-k+g-j}) \perp s_\lambda = \sum_{\mu \in B} s_\mu = \sum_{\mu \in B} s_\mu$$

(by the definition of $B$)

$$= \sum_{\nu \in B} s_\nu.$$  \hspace{1cm} (98)

25More precisely: This follows from Corollary 10.9 (applied to $i = n - k + g - j$ when $n - k + g - j \in \mathbb{N}$. But otherwise, it is obvious for trivial reasons ($0 = 0$).
Hence, \( \mu \) becomes

\[
\sum_{\mu \in A} s_{\mu} = \sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} (-1)^i h_{n-k+g+i}(e_i)^\perp \sum_{\nu \in \mathcal{B}} s_{\nu} = (h_{n-k+g-j})^\perp s_{\lambda} \quad \text{(by (98))}
\]

\[
= \sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} (-1)^i h_{n-k+g+i}(e_i)^\perp \left( (h_{n-k+g-j})^\perp s_{\lambda} \right)
\]

\[
= \sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} (-1)^i h_{n-k+g+i} \left( (e_i)^\perp \circ (h_{n-k+g-j})^\perp \right) s_{\lambda}
\]

\[
= \sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} (-1)^i h_{n-k+g+i} (h_{n-k+g-j}e_i)^\perp s_{\lambda}
\]

\[
= \sum_{w \geq g} (-1)^{w-g} h_{n-k+w} (h_{n-k+g-j}e_{w-g})^\perp s_{\lambda}
\]

(here, we have substituted \( w - g \) for \( i \) in the sum).

Comparing this with

\[
\sum_{w \geq 1} (-1)^{w-g} h_{n-k+w} (h_{n-k+g-j}e_{w-g})^\perp s_{\lambda}
\]

\[
= \sum_{w=1}^{g-1} (-1)^{w-g} h_{n-k+w} \left( h_{n-k+g-j} e_{w-g} \begin{cases} \equiv 0 & \text{(since } w-g<0) \\ \text{otherwise} & \text{(since } w \leq g-1<g) \end{cases} \right) s_{\lambda}
\]

\[
+ \sum_{w \geq g} (-1)^{w-g} h_{n-k+w} (h_{n-k+g-j}e_{w-g})^\perp s_{\lambda}
\]

(since \( g \) is a positive integer)

\[
= \sum_{w=1}^{g-1} (-1)^{w-g} h_{n-k+w} (h_{n-k+g-j}0)^\perp s_{\lambda} + \sum_{w \geq g} (-1)^{w-g} h_{n-k+w} (h_{n-k+g-j}e_{w-g})^\perp s_{\lambda}
\]

\[
= \sum_{w \geq g} (-1)^{w-g} h_{n-k+w} (h_{n-k+g-j}e_{w-g})^\perp s_{\lambda},
\]
we obtain
\[
\sum_{\mu \in A} s_{\mu} = \sum_{w \geq 1} (-1)^{w-g} h_{n-k+w} (h_{n-k+g-j} e_{w-g})^\perp s_\lambda. \tag{99}
\]

In view of
\[
\sum_{\mu \in A} = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \mu_1 = n-k+g; \mu/\lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} (by \text{the definition of } A),
\]
this rewrites as
\[
\sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \mu_1 = n-k+g; \mu/\lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} s_{\mu} = \sum_{w \geq 1} (-1)^{w-g} h_{n-k+w} (h_{n-k+g-j} e_{w-g})^\perp s_\lambda.
\]

This proves Lemma 10.10.

Our next lemma will be a slight generalization of Lemma 7.17, but first we extend our definition of \(s_{(m,1)}\):

\textbf{Convention 10.11.} Let \(m \in \mathbb{N}\), and let \(j\) be a negative integer. Then, we shall understand the (otherwise undefined) expression \(s_{(m,1)}\) to mean \(0 \in \Lambda\).

We can now generalize Lemma 7.17 as follows:

\textbf{Lemma 10.12.} Let \(m\) be a positive integer. Let \(j \in \mathbb{Z}\) be such that \(m+j > 0\). Then,
\[
s_{(m,1)} = \sum_{i=1}^{m} (-1)^{i-1} h_{m-i} e_{j+i}.
\]

\textbf{Proof of Lemma 10.12} If \(j \in \mathbb{N}\), then this follows directly from Lemma 7.17. Hence, for the rest of this proof, we WLOG assume that \(j \notin \mathbb{N}\). Hence, \(j < 0\). Now, the proof of Lemma 10.12 is the same as our above proof of Lemma 7.17 with two changes:

- The inequality \(m+j > 0\) no longer follows from \(m > 0\) and \(j \geq 0\), but rather comes straight from the assumptions.

- The equality \(\sum_{i=0}^{j} (-1)^{i} h_{m+i} e_{j-i} = s_{(m,1)}\) no longer follows from (45), but rather comes from comparing \(\sum_{i=0}^{j} (-1)^{i} h_{m+i} e_{j-i} = (\text{empty sum}) = 0\) with \(s_{(m,1)} = 0\).

Thus, Lemma 10.12 is proven.
A basis for a quotient of symmetric polynomials (draft) March 18, 2021

Lemma 10.13. Let $j \in \{0, 1, \ldots, n-k\}$, and let $w$ be a positive integer. Then,

$$
\sum_{g=1}^{j} (-1)^{w-g} h_{n-k+g-j} e_{w-g} = (-1)^{w-j} s_{(n-k+1,1^{w-j-1})} - (-1)^{w} s_{(n-k-j+1,1^{w-1})}.
$$

Proof of Lemma 10.13 From $j \in \{0, 1, \ldots, n-k\}$, we obtain $0 \leq j \leq n-k \leq n-k+1$.

We have $
\begin{align*}
(n-k+1) + \left( w - j, 1 \right) &\geq (n-k+1) + (w - (n-k) - 1) = w > 0 \text{ (since } w \text{ is a positive integer)}.
\end{align*}

Hence, Lemma 10.12 (applied to $n-k+1$ and $w-j-1$ instead of $m$ and $j$) yields

$$
\begin{align*}
\sum_{i=1}^{n-k+1} (-1)^i h_{n-k+1-i} e_{w-j-1+i} &= \sum_{i=1}^{j} (-1)^{i-1} h_{n-k+1-i} e_{w-j-1+i} + \sum_{i=j+1}^{n-k+1} (-1)^{i-1} h_{n-k+1-i} e_{w-j-1+i} \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{j} (-1)^{i-1} h_{n-k+1-i} e_{w-j-1+i} + \sum_{i=j+1}^{n-k+1} (-1)^{i-1} h_{n-k+1-i} e_{w-j-1+i} \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{n-k+1} (-1)^{i-1} h_{n-k+1-i} e_{w-1+i} \\
&= \sum_{i=j+1}^{n-k+1} (-1)^{i-1} h_{n-k+1-i} e_{w-j-1+i}.
\end{align*}
$$

(100)

(since $0 \leq j \leq n-k$). Also, $n-k - j + 1 \geq n-k - (n-k) + 1 = 1$;

thus, $n-k-j+1$ is a positive integer. Also,

$$
\begin{align*}
(n-k-j+1) + (w-1) &\geq (n-k-(n-k)+1) + (w-1) = w > 0.
\end{align*}
$$

Hence, Lemma 7.17 (applied to $n-k-j+1$ and $w-1$ instead of $m$ and $j$) yields

$$
\begin{align*}
\sum_{i=1}^{n-k-j+1} (-1)^{i-1} h_{n-k-j+1-i} e_{w-1+i} &= \sum_{i=1}^{j} (-1)^{i-1} h_{n-k+1-i} e_{w-j-1+i} \\
&= \sum_{i=j+1}^{n-k+1} (-1)^{i-1} h_{n-k+1-i} e_{w-j-1+i} \\
&= (-1)^j \sum_{i=j+1}^{n-k+1} (-1)^{i-1} h_{n-k+1-i} e_{w-j-1+i}.
\end{align*}
$$

(100)
Multiplying this equality by \((-1)^j\), we find

\[
(-1)^j s_{(n-k-j+1,1^{w-1})} = \sum_{i=j+1}^{n-k+1} (-1)^{i-1} h_{n-k+1-i} e_{w-j+1+i}.
\]

Subtracting this equality from \((100)\), we obtain

\[
\begin{align*}
\sum_{i=1}^{j} (1) - (1)^j s_{(n-k+1,1^{w-j})} &= \sum_{i=1}^{j} (1) - (1)^j \left( \sum_{i=j+1}^{n-k+1} (-1)^{i-1} h_{n-k+1-i} e_{w-j+1+i} \right) \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{j} (-1)^{i-1} h_{n-k+1-i} e_{w-j+1+i}.
\end{align*}
\]

(101)

On the other hand,

\[
\begin{align*}
\sum_{g=1}^{j} (-1)^{w-g} h_{n-k+g-j} e_{w-g} &= \sum_{i=1}^{j} (-1)^{w-(j+1-i)} h_{n-k+(j+1-i)-j} e_{w-(j+1-i)} \\
&= (-1)^{w-j} \sum_{i=1}^{j} (-1)^{i-1} h_{n-k+1-i} e_{w-j+1+i} \\
&= s_{(n-k+1,1^{w-j-1})} - (1)^j s_{(n-k+j+1,1^{w-1})} \\
&= (1)^{w-j} s_{(n-k+1,1^{w-j})} - (1)^{w-j} (-1)^j s_{(n-k+j+1,1^{w-1})} \\
&= (1)^{w-j} (-1)^{w-j} (-1)^j s_{(n-k+j+1,1^{w-1})} \\
&= (-1)^{w-j} s_{(n-k+1,1^{w-j-1})} - (1)^{w-j} s_{(n-k+j+1,1^{w-1})}.
\end{align*}
\]

This proves Lemma \([10.13]\)

**Proof of Theorem** \([10.7]\) We have \(j \in \{0, 1, \ldots, n-k\}\), thus \(0 \leq j \leq n-k\). Also, we have \(\lambda \in P_{k,n}\); thus, the partition \(\lambda\) has at most \(k\) parts and satisfies \(\lambda_1 \leq n-k\).
Let $g$ be an integer such that $g \geq j + 1$. If $\mu$ is a partition such that $\mu/\lambda$ is a horizontal $j$-strip, then $\mu_1 \leq \lambda_1 + j \leq n - k + j < n - k + g$ and thus $\mu_1 \neq n - k + g$. Thus, there exists no partition $\mu$ such that $\mu_1 = n - k + g$ and such that $\mu/\lambda$ is a horizontal $j$-strip. Hence,

$$
\sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \mu_1 = n - k + g; \mu/\lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} s_\mu = (\text{empty sum}) = 0. \tag{102}
$$

Now, forget that we fixed $g$. We thus have proven the equality (102) for every integer $g$ satisfying $g \geq j + 1$.

On the other hand, let $g \in \{1, 2, \ldots, j\}$. Thus, $g \leq j \leq n - k$. If $w$ is an integer satisfying $w \geq n + 1$, then $\frac{w}{n + 1} \leq \frac{g}{n - k} \geq (n + 1) - (n - k) = k + 1 > k$, and thus the partition $(1^{w - g})$ does not satisfy $(1^{w - g}) \subseteq \lambda$ (because the partition $\lambda$ has at most $k$ parts, whereas the partition $(1^{w - g})$ has $w - g > k$ parts), and therefore we have

$$
\left( e_{w - g} \right) = (s_{(1^{w - g})}) = s_{\lambda/(1^{w - g})} \quad (\text{by } (28))
$$

$$
= 0 \quad (\text{since we don’t have } (1^{w - g}) \subseteq \lambda). \tag{103}
$$

Hence, if $w$ is an integer satisfying $w \geq n + 1$, then

$$
\left( h_{n - k + g - j} e_{w - g} \right) = (s_{\lambda}) \quad (\text{by } (29))
$$

$$
= (h_{n - k + g - j} \circ (e_{w - g})^\perp) (s_{\lambda}) \quad (\text{by } (29))
$$

$$
= (h_{n - k + g - j})^\perp (e_{w - g})^\perp (s_{\lambda}) = 0. \tag{104}
$$
Now,
\[
\sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition}; \mu_1 = n - k + g; \mu/\lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} s_{\mu} = \sum_{w \geq 1} (-1)^{w-g} h_{n-k+w} (h_{n-k+g-j} e_{w-g})^\perp s_{\lambda}
\]
(by Lemma \[10.10\])
\[
= \sum_{w=1}^n (-1)^{w-g} h_{n-k+w} (h_{n-k+g-j} e_{w-g})^\perp s_{\lambda}
\]
\[
+ \sum_{w \geq n+1} (-1)^{w-g} h_{n-k+w} (h_{n-k+g-j} e_{w-g})^\perp s_{\lambda}
\]
(by \[10.14\])
\[
= \sum_{w=1}^n (-1)^{w-g} h_{n-k+w} (h_{n-k+g-j} e_{w-g})^\perp s_{\lambda}.
\]
(105)

Now, forget that we fixed \(g\). We thus have proven the equality \[105\] for each \(g \in \{1, 2, \ldots, j\}\).

Proposition \[10.8\] (applied to \(i = j\)) yields
\[
s_{\lambda} h_j = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition}; \mu/\lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} s_{\mu} = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition}; \mu_1 \leq n - k; \mu/\lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} s_{\mu} + \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition}; \mu_1 > n - k; \mu/\lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} s_{\mu}
\]
(since each partition $\mu$ satisfies either $\mu_1 \leq n - k$ or $\mu_1 > n - k$). Hence,

$$s_\lambda h_j = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \mu_1 \leq n - k; \mu/\lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} s_\mu$$

$$\begin{align*}
&= \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \mu_1 > n - k; \mu/\lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} s_\mu = \sum_{\mu = n - k + g; \mu/\lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} s_\mu \\
&= \sum_{g=1}^{j} \left( \sum_{\mu = n - k + g; \mu/\lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} s_\mu \right) + \sum_{g=j+1}^{\infty} \left( \sum_{\mu = n - k + g; \mu/\lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} s_\mu \right) \\
&= \sum_{g=1}^{j} \left( \sum_{w=1}^{n} (-1)^{w-g} h_{n-k+w} \left( h_{n-k+g-j} e^{w-g} \right)^{\perp} s_\lambda \right) \\
&= \sum_{g=1}^{j} \sum_{w=1}^{n} (-1)^{w-g} h_{n-k+w} \left( h_{n-k+g-j} e^{w-g} \right)^{\perp} s_\lambda \\
&= \sum_{w=1}^{n} \left( \sum_{g=1}^{j} (-1)^{w-g} h_{n-k+w} \left( h_{n-k+g-j} e^{w-g} \right)^{\perp} s_\lambda \right) \\
&= \sum_{w=1}^{n} h_{n-k+w} \left( \sum_{g=1}^{j} (-1)^{w-g} h_{n-k+g-j} e^{w-g} \right)^{\perp} s_\lambda \\
&= \sum_{w=1}^{n} h_{n-k+w} \left( (-1)^{w-j} s_{n-k+1,1^{w-j-1}} - (-1)^{w} s_{n-k-j+1,1^{w-1}} \right)^{\perp} s_\lambda \\
&= \sum_{w=1}^{n} h_{n-k+w} \left( (-1)^{w-j} s_{n-k+1,1^{w-j-1}} \right)^{\perp} s_\lambda \\
&= \sum_{w=1}^{n} h_{n-k+w} \left( (-1)^{w-j} s_{n-k+1,1^{w-j-1}} \right)^{\perp} s_\lambda \\
&= \sum_{w=1}^{n} h_{n-k+w} \left( (-1)^{w} s_{n-k-j+1,1^{w-1}} \right)^{\perp} s_\lambda.
\end{align*}$$

\hspace{2in} (106)
Next, we claim that
\[
\left( s_{(n-k+1, 1^w-j-1)} \right) \perp s_\lambda = 0 \quad \text{for each } w \in \{1, 2, \ldots, n\}. \quad (107)
\]

[Proof of (107): Let } w \in \{1, 2, \ldots, n\}. \text{ If } w - j - 1 \text{ is a negative integer, then } s_{(n-k+1, 1^w-j-1)} = 0 \text{ (by Convention 10.11), and thus (107) holds in this case. Hence, for the rest of this proof of (107), we WLOG assume that } w - j - 1 \text{ is not a negative integer. Thus, } w - j - 1 \in \mathbb{N}. \text{ Now, the partition } (n-k+1, 1^w-j-1) \text{ has a bigger first entry than the partition } \lambda \text{ (since its first entry is } n-k+1 > n-k \geq \lambda_1) \text{. Thus, we do not have } (n-k+1, 1^w-j-1) \subseteq \lambda. \text{ Hence, } s_\lambda / (n-k+1, 1^w-j-1) = 0. \text{ But (28) yields } \left( s_{(n-k+1, 1^w-j-1)} \right) \perp s_\lambda = s_\lambda / (n-k+1, 1^w-j-1) = 0. \text{ This proves (107).}]

Next, we claim that
\[
\left( s_{(n-k-j+1, 1^w-1)} \right) \perp s_\lambda = 0 \quad \text{for each } w \in \{k+1, k+2, \ldots, n\}. \quad (108)
\]

[Proof of (108): Let } w \in \{k+1, k+2, \ldots, n\}. \text{ Then, } w \geq k+1. \text{ Now, the number of parts of the partition } (n-k-j+1, 1^w-1) \text{ is } 1 + (w-1) = w \geq k+1 > k, \text{ which is bigger than the number of parts of } \lambda (\text{since } \lambda \text{ has at most } k \text{ parts). Hence, we don’t have } (n-k-j+1, 1^w-1) \subseteq \lambda. \text{ Thus, } s_\lambda / (n-k-j+1, 1^w-1) = 0. \text{ But (28) yields } \left( s_{(n-k-j+1, 1^w-1)} \right) \perp s_\lambda = s_\lambda / (n-k-j+1, 1^w-1) = 0. \text{ This proves (108).}]

Now, (106) becomes

\[ s_\lambda h_j - \sum_{\mu} s_\mu \]

where \( \mu \) is a partition; \( \mu_1 \leq n-k \); \( \mu/\lambda \) is a horizontal \( j \)-strip

\[ = \sum_{w=1}^{n} h_{n-k+w} (-1)^{w-j} \left( s_{(n-k+1,w-j-1)} \right) \perp s_\lambda \]

(by (107))

\[ - \sum_{w=1}^{n} h_{n-k+w} (-1)^{w} \left( s_{(n-k-j+1,w-1)} \right) \perp s_\lambda \]

\[ = - \sum_{w=1}^{n} h_{n-k+w} (-1)^{w} \left( s_{(n-k-j+1,w-1)} \right) \perp s_\lambda \]

\[ = - \left( \sum_{w=1}^{k} h_{n-k+w} (-1)^{w} \left( s_{(n-k-j+1,w-1)} \right) \perp s_\lambda \right) \]

\[ + \sum_{w=k+1}^{n} h_{n-k+w} (-1)^{w} \left( s_{(n-k-j+1,w-1)} \right) \perp s_\lambda \]

(since \( 0 \leq k \leq n \))

\[ = - \sum_{w=1}^{k} h_{n-k+w} (-1)^{w} \left( s_{(n-k-j+1,w-1)} \right) \perp s_\lambda \]

\[ = - \sum_{w=1}^{k} (-1)^{w} h_{n-k+w} \left( s_{(n-k-j+1,w-1)} \right) \perp s_\lambda \]

\[ = - \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^{i} h_{n-k+i} \left( s_{(n-k-j+1,i-1)} \right) \perp s_\lambda \]

(Here, we have renamed the summation index \( w \) as \( i \)). Hence,

\[ s_\lambda h_j = \sum_{\mu} s_\mu - \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^{i} h_{n-k+i} \left( s_{(n-k-j+1,i-1)} \right) \perp s_\lambda. \]

This proves Theorem 10.7.

Proof of Theorem 10.5

Theorem 10.7 yields

\[ s_\lambda h_j = \sum_{\mu} s_\mu - \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^{i} h_{n-k+i} \left( s_{(n-k-j+1,i-1)} \right) \perp s_\lambda. \]
Both sides of this equality are symmetric functions in $\Lambda$. If we evaluate them at $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k$ and project the resulting symmetric polynomials onto $S/I$, then we obtain
\[
\overline{s_\lambda h_j} = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \mu_1 \leq n-k; \mu/\lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} \overline{s_\mu} - \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^i \frac{h_{n-k+i}}{a_i} \left( s_{(n-k-j+1,1^{i-1})} \right) \perp s_\lambda
\] (since (15) yields $h_{n-k+i} \equiv a_i \mod I$)
\[
= \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \mu_1 \leq n-k; \mu/\lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} \overline{s_\mu} - \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^i a_i \left( s_{(n-k-j+1,1^{i-1})} \right) \perp s_\lambda.
\] (109)

But every partition $\mu$ has either at most $k$ parts or more than $k$ parts. Hence,
\[
\sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \mu_1 \leq n-k; \mu/\lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} \overline{s_\mu} + \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \mu_1 \leq n-k; \mu \text{ has at most } k \text{ parts; } \mu/\lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} \overline{s_\mu} = \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \mu/\lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} \overline{s_\mu}.
\]
(because the partitions $\mu$ such that $\mu_1 \leq n-k$ and such that $\mu$ has at most $k$ parts are precisely the partitions $\mu \in P_{k,n}$)

Hence, (109) becomes
\[
\overline{s_\lambda h_j} = \sum_{\mu \text{ is a partition; } \mu_1 \leq n-k; \mu/\lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} \overline{s_\mu} - \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^i a_i \left( s_{(n-k-j+1,1^{i-1})} \right) \perp s_\lambda
\]

This proves Theorem 10.5
Let us again use the notation $c^\gamma_{\alpha,\beta}$ for a Littlewood–Richardson coefficient (defined as in [GriRei20, Definition 2.5.8], for example). Then, we can restate Theorem 10.5 as follows:

**Theorem 10.14.** Let $\lambda \in P_{k,n}$. Let $j \in \{0, 1, \ldots, n - k\}$. Then,

$$s_{\lambda} h_j = \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \mu / \lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} \overline{s}_\mu - \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^i a_i \sum_{\nu \subseteq \lambda} c^\lambda_{(n-k-j+1,1^{i-1}),\nu} \overline{s}_\nu,$$

where the last sum ranges over all partitions $\nu$ satisfying $\nu \subseteq \lambda$.

**Proof of Theorem 10.14.** Let $\mu$ be a partition. Then, (28) yields

$$\overline{(s\mu)^{\perp} s\lambda} = s\lambda / \mu = \sum_{\nu \text{ is a partition}} c^\lambda_{\mu,\nu} s\nu = \sum_{\nu \subseteq \lambda; \nu \text{ is a partition}} c^\lambda_{\mu,\nu} s\nu + \sum_{\nu \subseteq \lambda; \nu \text{ is a partition; we don’t have } \nu \subseteq \lambda} c^\lambda_{\mu,\nu} s\nu = \sum_{\nu \subseteq \lambda} c^\lambda_{\mu,\nu} s\nu. \quad (110)$$

Both sides of this equality are symmetric functions in $\Lambda$. If we evaluate them at $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k$ and project the resulting symmetric polynomials onto $S/I$, then we obtain

$$\overline{(s\mu)^{\perp} s\lambda} = \sum_{\nu \subseteq \lambda} c^\lambda_{\mu,\nu} \overline{s}\nu. \quad (111)$$

Now, forget that we fixed $\mu$. We thus have proven (111) for each partition $\mu$. Theorem 10.5 yields

$$\overline{s_{\lambda} h_j} = \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \mu / \lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} \overline{s}_\mu - \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^i a_i \sum_{\nu \subseteq \lambda} c^\lambda_{(n-k-j+1,1^{i-1}),\nu} \overline{s}_\nu = \sum_{\nu \subseteq \lambda} c^\lambda_{(n-k-j+1,1^{i-1}),\nu} \overline{s}_\nu \quad (\text{by (111), applied to } \mu = (n-k-j+1,1^{i-1}))$$

$$= \sum_{\mu \in P_{k,n}; \mu / \lambda \text{ is a horizontal } j\text{-strip}} \overline{s}_\mu - \sum_{i=1}^{k} (-1)^i a_i \sum_{\nu \subseteq \lambda} c^\lambda_{(n-k-j+1,1^{i-1}),\nu} \overline{s}_\nu.$$

This proves Theorem 10.14.

Note that Theorem 10.14 can also be used to prove Theorem 9.5.
10.4. Positivity?

Let us recall some background about the quantum cohomology ring $\text{QH}^*(\text{Gr}_{kn})$ discussed in [Posth05]. The structure constants of the $\mathbb{Z}[q]$-algebra $\text{QH}^*(\text{Gr}_{kn})$ are polynomials in the indeterminate $q$, whose coefficients are the famous Gromov-Witten invariants $C_{\lambda \mu \nu}^d$. These Gromov-Witten invariants $C_{\lambda \mu \nu}^d$ are nonnegative integers (as follows from their geometric interpretation, but also from the “Quantum Littlewood-Richardson Rule” [BKPT16, Theorem 2]). This appears to generalize to the general case of $S/I$:

**Conjecture 10.15.** Let $b_i = (-1)^{n-k-1} a_i$ for each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$. Let $\lambda$, $\mu$ and $\nu$ be three partitions in $P_{k,n}$. Then, $(-1)^{|\lambda|+|\mu|-|\nu|} \text{coeff}_v(s_{\lambda}s_{\mu})$ is a polynomial in $b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_k$ with nonnegative integer coefficients. (See Definition 6.2 for the meaning of coeff$_v$.)

We have verified this conjecture for all $n \leq 8$ using SageMath.

11. The “rim hook algorithm”

We shall next take aim at a recursive formula for “straightening” a Schur polynomial – i.e., representing an $s_\mu$, where $\mu$ is a partition that does not belong to $P_{k,n}$, as a $k$-linear combination of “smaller” $s_\lambda$’s. However, before we can state this formula, we will have to introduce several new notations.

11.1. Schur polynomials for non-partitions

Recall Definition 5.6. Thus, the elements of $P_k$ are weakly decreasing $k$-tuples in $\mathbb{N}^k$. For each $\lambda \in P_k$, a Schur polynomial $s_\lambda \in S$ is defined. Let us extend this definition by defining $s_\lambda$ for each $\lambda \in \mathbb{Z}^k$:

**Definition 11.1.** Let $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k) \in \mathbb{Z}^k$. Then, we define a symmetric polynomial $s_\lambda \in S$ by

$$s_\lambda = \det \left( (h_{\lambda_u-u+v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k} \right).$$

(112)

This new definition does not clash with the previous use of the notation $s_\lambda$, because when $\lambda \in P_k$, both definitions yield the same result (because of Proposition 5.7 (a)).

This definition is similar to the definition of $\bar{s}_{(a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n)}$ in [GriRei20, Exercise 2.9.1 (c)], but we are working with symmetric polynomials rather than symmetric functions here.

Definition 11.1 does not really open the gates to a new world of symmetric polynomials; indeed, each $s_\lambda$ (with $\lambda \in \mathbb{Z}^k$) defined in Definition 11.1 is either
0 or can be rewritten in the form $\pm s_{\lambda}$ for some $\lambda \in P_k$. Here is a more precise statement of this:

**Proposition 11.2.** Let $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}^k$. Define a $k$-tuple $\beta = (\beta_1, \beta_2, \ldots, \beta_k)$ by

$$(\beta_i = \alpha_i + k - i \text{ for each } i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}).$$

(a) If $\beta$ has at least one negative entry, then $s_{\alpha} = 0$.
(b) If $\beta$ has two equal entries, then $s_{\alpha} = 0$.
(c) Assume that $\beta$ has no negative entries and no two equal entries. Let $\sigma \in S_k$ be the permutation such that $\beta_{\sigma(1)} > \beta_{\sigma(2)} > \cdots > \beta_{\sigma(k)}$. (Such a permutation $\sigma$ exists and is unique, since $\beta$ has no two equal entries.) Define a $k$-tuple $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k) \in \mathbb{Z}^k$ by

$$(\lambda_i = \beta_{\sigma(i)} - k + i \text{ for each } i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}).$$

Then, $\lambda \in P_k$ and $s_{\alpha} = (-1)^\sigma s_{\lambda}$.

**Proof of Proposition 11.2.** For each $u \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$, we have $\beta_u = \alpha_u + k - u$ (by the definition of $\beta_u$) and thus

$$\beta_u - k = (\alpha_u + k - u) - k = \alpha_u - u. \quad (113)$$

The definition of $s_{\alpha}$ yields

$$s_{\alpha} = \det \begin{pmatrix} h_{\alpha_u - u + v} \end{pmatrix}_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}$$

(since $[113]$ yields $a_u - u = \beta_u - k$).

$$= \det \left( (h_{\beta_u - k + v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k} \right). \quad (114)$$

(b) Assume that $\beta$ has two equal entries. In other words, there are two distinct elements $i$ and $j$ of $\{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$ such that $\beta_i = \beta_j$. Consider these $i$ and $j$. The $i$-th and $j$-th rows of the matrix $(h_{\beta_u - k + v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}$ are equal (since $\beta_i = \beta_j$). Hence, this matrix has two equal rows. Thus, its determinant is 0. In other words, $\det \left( (h_{\beta_u - k + v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k} \right) = 0$. Now, (114) becomes

$$s_{\alpha} = \det \left( (h_{\beta_u - k + v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k} \right) = 0.$$ This proves Proposition 11.2 (b).

(a) Assume that $\beta$ has at least one negative entry. In other words, there exists some $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$ such that $\beta_i < 0$. Consider this $i$. For each $v \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$, we have $\beta_i - k + v \leq k \leq k = \beta_i < 0$ and thus $h_{\beta_i - k + v} = 0$. 

105
Hence, all entries of the \( i \)-th row of the matrix \((h_{\beta_u - k + v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}\) are 0. Hence, this matrix has a zero row. Thus, its determinant is 0. In other words, \(\det((h_{\beta_u - k + v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}) = 0\). Now, (114) becomes \(s_\alpha = \det((h_{\beta_u - k + v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}) = 0\). This proves Proposition 11.2 (a).

(c) It is well-known that if we permute the rows of a \( k \times k \)-matrix using a permutation \( \tau \), then the determinant of the matrix gets multiplied by \((-1)^\tau\).
In other words, every \( k \times k \)-matrix \((b_{u,v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}\) and every \( \tau \in S_k \) satisfy
\[
\det\left((b_{\tau(u),v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}\right) = (-1)^\tau \det\left((b_{u,v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}\right).
\]
Applying this to \((b_{u,v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k} = (h_{\beta_u - k + v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}\) and \(\tau = \sigma\), we obtain
\[
\det\left((h_{\beta_{\sigma(u)} - k + v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}\right) = (-1)^\sigma \det\left((h_{\beta_u - k + v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}\right).
\]
Multiplying both sides of this equality by \((-1)^\sigma\), we find
\[
(-1)^\sigma \det\left((h_{\beta_{\sigma(u)} - k + v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}\right) = (-1)^\sigma (-1)^\sigma \det\left((h_{\beta_u - k + v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}\right)
= ((-1)^\sigma)^2 = 1 = \det\left((h_{\beta_u - k + v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}\right). \quad (115)
\]
For each \( u \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\} \), we have \(\lambda_u = \beta_{\sigma(u)} - k + u\) (by the definition of \(\lambda_u\)) and thus
\[
\lambda_u - u = \beta_{\sigma(u)} - k. \quad (116)
\]
Now, (114) becomes
\[
s_\alpha = \det\left((h_{\beta_u - k + v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}\right)
= (-1)^\sigma \det\left((h_{\beta_{\sigma(u)} - k + v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}\right) \quad \text{(by (115))}
= (-1)^\sigma \det\left((h_{\lambda_u - u + v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}\right) \quad \text{(by (116))}
= (-1)^\sigma s_\lambda. \quad \text{(by (112))}
\]

It remains to prove that \(\lambda \in P_k\).

Let \( i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k-1\} \). Then, \(\beta_{\sigma(i)} > \beta_{\sigma(i+1)}\) (since \(\beta_{\sigma(1)} > \beta_{\sigma(2)} > \cdots > \beta_{\sigma(k)}\)) and thus \(\beta_{\sigma(i)} \geq \beta_{\sigma(i+1)} + 1\) (since \(\beta_{\sigma(i)}\) and \(\beta_{\sigma(i+1)}\) are integers). The definition of \(\lambda_{i+1}\) yields \(\lambda_{i+1} = \beta_{\sigma(i+1)} - k + (i + 1)\). The definition of \(\lambda_i\) yields
\[
\lambda_i = \min_{1 \leq j \leq i} \beta_{\sigma(j)} - k + i \geq \beta_{\sigma(i+1)} + 1 - k + i = \beta_{\sigma(i+1)} - k + (i + 1) = \lambda_{i+1}.
\]

106
Now, forget that we fixed $i$. We thus have proven that $\lambda_i \geq \lambda_{i+1}$ for each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k-1\}$. In other words, $\lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \cdots \geq \lambda_k$.

Let $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$. Then, $1 \leq i \leq k$ and thus $k \geq 1$, so that $\lambda_k$ is well-defined. Furthermore, from $i \leq k$, we obtain $\lambda_i \geq \lambda_k$ (since $\lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \cdots \geq \lambda_k$). But the definition of $\lambda_k$ yields $\lambda_k = \beta_{\sigma(k)} - k + k = \beta_{\sigma(k)} \geq 0$ (since all entries of $\beta$ are nonnegative (since $\beta$ has no negative entries)). Thus, $\lambda_1 \geq \lambda_k \geq 0$.

Now, forget that we fixed $i$. We thus have proven that $\lambda_i \geq 0$ for each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$. In other words, $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k$ are nonnegative integers (since they are clearly integers). Hence, $(\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k) \in \mathbb{N}^k$. Combining this with $\lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \cdots \geq \lambda_k$, we obtain $(\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k) \in P_k$. Hence, $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k) \in P_k$.

This completes the proof of Proposition 11.2(c). ☐

Let us next recall the bialternant formula for Schur polynomials. We need a few definitions first:

**Definition 11.3.** (a) Let $\rho$ denote the $k$-tuple $(k-1, k-2, \ldots, 0) \in \mathbb{N}^k$.

(b) We regard $\mathbb{Z}^k$ as a $\mathbb{Z}$-module in the obvious way: Addition is define entrywise (i.e., we set $\alpha + \beta = (\alpha_1 + \beta_1, \alpha_2 + \beta_2, \ldots, \alpha_k + \beta_k)$ for any $\alpha = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_k) \in \mathbb{Z}^k$ and any $\beta = (\beta_1, \beta_2, \ldots, \beta_k) \in \mathbb{Z}^k$). This also defines subtraction on $\mathbb{Z}^k$ (which, too, works entrywise). We let $0$ denote the $k$-tuple $\begin{pmatrix} 0, 0, \ldots, 0 \end{pmatrix}$ $\in \mathbb{N}^k \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^k$; this is the zero vector of $\mathbb{Z}^k$.

**Definition 11.4.** Let $\alpha = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_k) \in \mathbb{N}^k$. Then, we define the *alternant* $a_\alpha \in \mathcal{P}$ by

$$a_\alpha = \det \left( \begin{pmatrix} x_i^{\alpha_j} \end{pmatrix}_{1 \leq i \leq k, 1 \leq j \leq k} \right).$$

The two definitions we have just made match the notations in [GriRei20, §2.6], except that we are using $k$ instead of $n$ for the number of indeterminates.

Note that the element $a_\rho$ of $\mathcal{P}$ is the Vandermonde determinant

$$\det \left( \begin{pmatrix} x_i^{k-j} \end{pmatrix}_{1 \leq i \leq k, 1 \leq j \leq k} \right) = \prod_{1 \leq i < j \leq k} (x_i - x_j);$$

it is a regular element of $\mathcal{P}$ (that is, a non-zero-divisor).

We recall the *bialternant formula* for Schur polynomials ([GriRei20] Corollary 2.6.7): 

**Proposition 11.5.** For any $\lambda \in P_k$, we have $s_\lambda = a_{\lambda+\rho}/a_\rho$ in $\mathcal{P}$.

Let us extend this fact to arbitrary $\lambda \in \mathbb{Z}^k$ satisfying $\lambda + \rho \in \mathbb{N}^k$ (and rename $\lambda$ as $\alpha$):
Proposition 11.6. Let \( \alpha \in \mathbb{Z}^k \) be such that \( \alpha + \rho \in \mathbb{N}^k \). Then, \( s_\alpha = a_{\alpha + \rho} / a_\rho \) in \( \mathcal{P} \).

Proof of Proposition 11.6. We have \( \rho = (k - 1, k - 2, \ldots, 0) \). Thus,
\[
\rho_i = k - i \quad \text{for each } i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}. \tag{117}
\]
Define a \( k \)-tuple \( \beta = (\beta_1, \beta_2, \ldots, \beta_k) \) as in Proposition 11.2. Thus, for each \( i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\} \), we have
\[
\beta_i = \alpha_i + k - i = \alpha_i + \rho_i = (\alpha + \rho)_i. \tag{by (117)}
\]
In other words, \( \beta = \alpha + \rho \). Hence, \( \beta = \alpha + \rho \in \mathbb{N}^k \). Thus, the \( k \)-tuple \( \beta \) has no negative entries.

Moreover, from \( \alpha + \rho = \beta \), we obtain
\[
a_{\alpha + \rho} = a_\beta = \det \left( x_{i,j}^{\beta_i} \right)_{1 \leq i \leq k, 1 \leq j \leq k} \quad (\text{by the definition of } a_\beta) \tag{118}
\]
(here, we have renamed the indices \( i \) and \( j \) as \( u \) and \( v \)). Now, we are in one of the following two cases:

Case 1: The \( k \)-tuple \( \beta \) has two equal entries.

Case 2: The \( k \)-tuple \( \beta \) has no two equal entries.

Let us first consider Case 1. In this case, the \( k \)-tuple \( \beta \) has two equal entries. In other words, there are two distinct elements \( i \) and \( j \) of \( \{1, 2, \ldots, k\} \) such that \( \beta_i = \beta_j \). Consider these \( i \) and \( j \). The \( i \)-th and \( j \)-th columns of the matrix \( \left( x_{u,v}^{\beta_v} \right)_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k} \) are equal (since \( \beta_i = \beta_j \)). Hence, this matrix has two equal columns. Thus, its determinant is 0. In other words, \( \det \left( x_{u,v}^{\beta_v} \right)_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k} = 0 \). Now, (118) becomes \( a_{\alpha + \rho} = \det \left( x_{u,v}^{\beta_v} \right)_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k} = 0 \). Hence, \( a_{\alpha + \rho} / a_\rho = 0 / a_\rho = 0 \). Comparing this with \( s_\alpha = 0 \) (which follows from Proposition 11.2(b)), we obtain \( s_\alpha = a_{\alpha + \rho} / a_\rho \). Thus, Proposition 11.6 is proven in Case 1.

Let us next consider Case 2. In this case, the \( k \)-tuple \( \beta \) has no two equal entries. Thus, there is a unique permutation \( \sigma \in S_k \) that sorts this \( k \)-tuple into strictly decreasing order. In other words, there is a unique permutation \( \sigma \in S_k \) such that \( \beta_{\sigma(1)} > \beta_{\sigma(2)} > \cdots > \beta_{\sigma(k)} \). Consider this \( \sigma \). Define a \( k \)-tuple \( \lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k) \in \mathbb{Z}^k \) by
\[
\lambda_i = \beta_{\sigma(i)} - k + i \quad \text{for each } i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}.
\]
Then, Proposition 11.2 (c) yields $\lambda \in P_k$ and $s_\lambda = (-1)^\sigma s_\lambda$.

It is well-known that if we permute the columns of a $k \times k$-matrix using a permutation $\tau$, then the determinant of the matrix gets multiplied by $(-1)^\tau$. In other words, every $k \times k$-matrix $(b_{u,v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}$ and every $\tau \in S_k$ satisfy
\[
\det \left( (b_{u,\tau(v)})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k} \right) = (-1)^\tau \det \left( (b_{u,v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k} \right).
\]

Applying this to $(b_{u,v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k} = (x_u^{\beta(v)})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}$ and $\tau = \sigma$, we obtain
\[
\det \left( \left( x_u^{\beta(v)} \right)_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k} \right) = (-1)^\sigma \det \left( \left( x_u^{\beta(v)} \right)_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k} \right). \tag{119}
\]

But each $v \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$ satisfies
\[
(\lambda + \rho)_v = \lambda_v + \rho_v = (\beta_{\sigma(v)} - k + v) + (k - v) \tag{120}
\]
(by the definition of $\lambda_v$)

Now, the definition of $a_{\lambda+\rho}$ yields
\[
a_{\lambda+\rho} = \det \left( \left( x_i^{(\lambda+\rho)_j} \right)_{1 \leq i \leq k, 1 \leq j \leq k} \right) = \det \left( \left( x_i^{(\lambda+\rho)_v} \right)_{1 \leq i \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k} \right)
\]
(by the definition of $a_{\lambda+\rho}$)

\[
= \det \left( \left( x_u^{\beta_{\sigma(v)}} \right)_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k} \right) \tag{by (119)}
\]

\[
= (-1)^\sigma a_{\lambda+\rho}. \tag{118}
\]

But $\lambda \in P_k$. Hence, Proposition 11.5 yields
\[
s_\lambda = a_{\lambda+\rho} / a_\rho = (-1)^\sigma a_{\lambda+\rho} / a_\rho.
\]

Hence,
\[
s_\lambda = (-1)^\sigma \frac{s_\lambda}{a_\rho} = (-1)^\sigma \frac{(-1)^\sigma a_{\lambda+\rho} / a_\rho}{a_\rho} = a_{\lambda+\rho} / a_\rho.
\]

Hence,
\[
s_\lambda = (-1)^\sigma \frac{s_\lambda}{a_\rho} = (-1)^\sigma \frac{(-1)^\sigma a_{\lambda+\rho} / a_\rho}{a_\rho} = a_{\lambda+\rho} / a_\rho. \tag{((-1)^\sigma)^2 = 1}
\]

109
Thus, Proposition 11.6 is proven in Case 2.

We have now proven Proposition 11.6 in both Cases 1 and 2. Thus, Proposition 11.6 is proven.

11.2. The uncancelled Pieri rule

Having defined $s_\lambda$ for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{Z}^k$ (rather than merely for partitions), we can state a nonstandard version of the Pieri rule for products of the form $s_\lambda h_i$, which will turn out rather useful:

**Theorem 11.7.** Let $\lambda \in \mathbb{Z}^k$ be such that $\lambda + \rho \in \mathbb{N}^k$. Let $m \in \mathbb{N}$. Then,

$$s_\lambda h_m = \sum_{\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k; |\nu| = m} s_{\lambda + \nu}.$$

**Example 11.8.** For this example, let $k = 3$ and $\lambda = (-2, 2, 1)$. Then, $\lambda + \rho = (-2, 2, 1) + (2, 1, 0) = (0, 3, 1)$. It is easy to see (using Proposition 11.2(c)) that $s_\lambda = s_{(1)}$.

Furthermore, set $m = 2$. Then, the $\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k$ satisfying $|\nu| = m$ are the six 3-tuples

$$(2, 0, 0), \quad (0, 2, 0), \quad (0, 0, 2), \quad (1, 1, 0), \quad (1, 0, 1), \quad (0, 1, 1).$$

Hence, Theorem 11.7 yields

$$s_{(-2,2,1)} h_2 = \sum_{\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k; |\nu| = m} s_{(-2,2,1) + \nu}$$

$$= s_{(-2,2,1) + (2,0,0)} + s_{(-2,2,1) + (0,2,0)} + s_{(-2,2,1) + (0,0,2)}$$

(by Proposition 11.2(c))

$$= s_{(-2,2,1)} - s_{(1,1,1)}$$

(by Proposition 11.2(c))

$$= s_{(-2,2,1) + (1,1,0)}$$

(by Proposition 11.2(b))

$$= s_{(-2,2,1) + (1,0,1)}$$

(by Proposition 11.2(c))

$$= s_{(-2,2,1) + (0,1,1)}$$

(by Proposition 11.2(c))

$$= -s_{(1,1,1)} + s_{(3)} + 0 + 0 + s_{(1,1,1)} + s_{(2,1)} = s_{(2,1)} + s_{(3)}.$$

In view of $s_{(-2,2,1)} = s_{(1)}$, this rewrites as $s_{(1)} h_2 = s_{(2,1)} + s_{(3)}$, which is exactly what the usual Pieri rule would yield. Note that the expression we obtained from Theorem 11.7 involves both vanishing addends (here, $s_{(-2,2,1) + (0,0,2)}$ and $s_{(-2,2,1) + (1,1,0)}$) and mutually cancelling addends (here, $s_{(-2,2,1) + (2,0,0)}$ and $s_{(-2,2,1) + (1,0,1)}$); this is why I call it the “uncancelled Pieri rule”.

110
We note that the idea of such an “uncancelled Pieri rule” as our Theorem 11.7 is not new (similar things appeared in [LakTho07, §2] and [Tamvak13]), but we have not seen it stated in this exact form anywhere in the literature. Thus, let us give a proof:

**Proof of Theorem 11.7** Define $\beta \in \mathbb{N}^k$ by $\beta = \lambda + \rho$. (This is well-defined, since $\lambda + \rho \in \mathbb{N}^k$.)

From (1), we obtain

$$h_m = \sum_{\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^k, |\alpha| = m} x_\alpha^{a_i} = \sum_{\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^k, |\alpha| = m} \prod_{i=1}^k x_\alpha^{a_i}. \quad (121)$$

For each permutation $\sigma \in S_k$, we have

$$h_m = h_m \left( x_{\sigma(1)}, x_{\sigma(2)}, \ldots, x_{\sigma(k)} \right) \quad \text{(since the polynomial } h_m \text{ is symmetric)}$$

$$= \sum_{\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^k, |\alpha| = m} \prod_{i=1}^k x_{\sigma(i)}^{a_i} \quad (122)$$

(here, we have substituted $x_{\sigma(1)}, x_{\sigma(2)}, \ldots, x_{\sigma(k)}$ for $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k$ in the equality (121)).

But Proposition 11.6 (applied to $\alpha = \lambda$) yields $s_\lambda = a_\lambda + a_\rho$ in $P$. Thus,

$$a_\rho s_\lambda = a_\lambda + a_\rho = a_\beta \quad \text{(since } \lambda + \rho = \beta\text{)}$$

$$= \det \left( x_i^{\beta_j} \right)_{1 \leq i \leq k, 1 \leq j \leq k} \quad \text{(by the definition of } a_\beta)$$

$$= \det \left( x_j^{\beta_i} \right)_{1 \leq j \leq k, 1 \leq i \leq k} \quad \text{(since the determinant of a matrix equals the determinant of its transpose)}$$

$$= \sum_{\sigma' \in S_k} (-1)^{\sigma'} \prod_{i=1}^k x_{\sigma'(i)}^{\beta_i} \quad \text{(by the definition of a determinant).}$$
Multiplying both sides of this equality with $h_m$, we find

$$a_{\rho} s_{\lambda} h_m = \left( \sum_{\sigma \in S_k} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^k x_{\sigma(i)}^{\beta_i} \right) h_m = \sum_{\sigma \in S_k} (-1)^\sigma \left( \prod_{i=1}^k x_{\sigma(i)}^{\beta_i} \right) h_m = \sum_{\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^k; |\alpha|=m} \prod_{i=1}^k x_{\alpha(i)}^{x_{\sigma(i)}}$$

(by (122))

$$= \sum_{\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^k; |\alpha|=m} (-1)^\sigma \left( \prod_{i=1}^k x_{\alpha(i)}^{\beta_i} \right) \prod_{i=1}^k x_{\sigma(i)}^{\alpha_i}$$

$$= \sum_{\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^k; |\alpha|=m} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^k \left( x_{\alpha(i)}^{\beta_i}, x_{\sigma(i)}^{\alpha_i} \right)$$

$$= \sum_{\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^k; |\alpha|=m} \prod_{i=1}^k \left( x_{\alpha(i)}^{\beta_i}, x_{\sigma(i)}^{\alpha_i} \right)$$

$$= \sum_{\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^k; |\alpha|=m} \prod_{i=1}^k \left( x_{\alpha(i)}^{\beta_i}, x_{\sigma(i)}^{\alpha_i} \right)$$

$$= \sum_{\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k; |\nu|=m} \prod_{i=1}^k \left( x_{\nu(i)}^{\beta_i}, x_{\sigma(i)}^{\alpha_i} \right)$$

(123)

(here, we have renamed the summation index $\alpha$ as $\nu$).

On the other hand, let $\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k$. Then, $(\lambda + \nu) + \rho = (\lambda + \rho) + \nu \in \mathbb{N}^k$.

Thus, Proposition 11.6 (applied to $\alpha = \lambda + \nu$) yields $s_{\lambda+\nu} = a_{(\lambda+\nu)+\rho}/a_{\rho}$ in $P$. 

112
Thus,

\[ a_{\rho s_{\lambda+v}} = a_{(\lambda+v)+\rho} = a_{\beta+v} \]  

(since \( (\lambda + v) + \rho = \lambda + \beta + v = \beta + v \))

\[ = \det \begin{pmatrix} x_{i}^{(\beta+v)}_{i} & \text{if } 1 \leq i \leq k, 1 \leq j \leq k \end{pmatrix} \]  

(by the definition of \( a_{\beta+v} \))

\[ = \det \begin{pmatrix} x_{j}^{(\beta+v)}_{i} & \text{if } 1 \leq i \leq k, 1 \leq j \leq k \end{pmatrix} \]  

(since the determinant of a matrix equals the determinant of its transpose)

\[ = \sum_{\sigma \in S_{k}} (-1)^{\sigma} \prod_{i=1}^{k} x_{\sigma(i)}^{(\beta+v)} \]  

(124)

(by the definition of a determinant).

Now, forget that we fixed \( v \). We thus have proven (124) for each \( v \in \mathbb{N}^{k} \).

Now, (123) becomes

\[ a_{\rho s_{\lambda+h_{m}}} = \sum_{v \in \mathbb{N}^{k}; \text{ } \sigma \in S_{k}} (-1)^{\sigma} \prod_{i=1}^{k} x_{\sigma(i)}^{(\beta+v)} \]  

(by 124)

We can cancel \( a_{\rho} \) from this equality (since \( a_{\rho} \) is a regular element of \( \mathcal{P} \)), and thus obtain

\[ s_{\lambda+h_{m}} = \sum_{v \in \mathbb{N}^{k}; \text{ } |v|=m} s_{\lambda+v}. \]

This proves Theorem 11.7.

11.3. The “rim hook algorithm”

For the rest of this section, we assume that \( k > 0 \).

We need one more weird definition:

**Definition 11.9.** Let \( V \) be the set of all \( k \)-tuples \((-n, \tau_2, \tau_3, \ldots, \tau_k) \in \mathbb{Z}^{k} \) satisfying

\[ (\tau_{i} \in \{0,1\} \text{ for each } i \in \{2,3,\ldots,k\}). \]  

(125)
Example 11.10. If $n = 6$ and $k = 3$, then
\[ V = \{(-6, 0, 0), (-6, 0, 1), (-6, 1, 0), (-6, 1, 1)\} . \] (126)

Proposition 11.11. Let $\tau \in V$. Then, $-|\tau| \in \{n-k+1, n-k+2, \ldots, n\}$.

Proof of Proposition 11.11. We have $\tau \in V$. Thus, $\tau$ has the form $\tau = (-n, \tau_2, \tau_3, \ldots, \tau_k) \in Z^k$ for some $\tau_2, \tau_3, \ldots, \tau_k$ satisfying (125) (by the definition of $V$). Consider these $\tau_2, \tau_3, \ldots, \tau_k$. We have $\tau = (-n, \tau_2, \tau_3, \ldots, \tau_k)$ and thus
\[
|\tau| = (-n) + \tau_2 + \tau_3 + \cdots + \tau_k = (-n) + \sum_{i=2}^{k} \tau_i
\]
and thus
\[
-|\tau| = -\left( (-n) + \sum_{i=2}^{k} \tau_i \right) = n - \sum_{i=2}^{k} \tau_i \geq n - \sum_{i=2}^{k} 1 \quad \text{(since (125) yields $\tau_i \in \{0,1\}$)}
\]
\[
= n - (k-1) = n-k+1.
\]
Combining this with
\[
-|\tau| = n - \sum_{i=2}^{k} \tau_i \geq n - \sum_{i=2}^{k} 0 = n,
\]
we obtain $n-k+1 \leq -|\tau| \leq n$. Thus, $-|\tau| \in \{n-k+1, n-k+2, \ldots, n\}$ (since $-|\tau|$ is an integer). This proves Proposition 11.11. \qed

We are now ready to state the main theorem of this section: a generalization of the “rim hook algorithm” from [BeCiFu99, §2, Main Lemma]:

Theorem 11.12. Assume that $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k$ belong to $k$.
Let $\mu \in P_k$ be such that $\mu_1 > n-k$. Then,
\[
\overline{s}_\mu = \sum_{j=1}^{k} (-1)^{k-j} a_j \sum_{\tau \in V; \quad -|\tau|=n-k+j} \overline{s}_{\mu+\tau}.
\]
Example 11.13. For this example, set $n = 6$ and $k = 3$ and $\mu = (5, 4, 1)$. Then, Theorem 11.12 yields

\[
\overline{s}_{(5,4,1)}
\]

\[
= \sum_{j=1}^{k} (-1)^{k-j} a_j \sum_{\tau \in V; \quad -|\tau| = n-k+j} \overline{s}_{(5,4,1)+\tau}
\]

\[
= (-1)^{3-1} a_1 \overline{s}_{(5,4,1)+(-6,1,1)} + (-1)^{3-2} a_2 \left( \overline{s}_{(5,4,1)+(-6,0,1)} + \overline{s}_{(5,4,1)+(-6,1,0)} \right)
\]

\[
+ (-1)^{3-3} a_3 \overline{s}_{(5,4,1)+(-6,0,0)}
\]

(by (126))

\[
= a_1 \overline{s}_{(5,4,1)+(-6,1,1)} - a_2 \left( \overline{s}_{(5,4,1)+(-6,0,1)} + \overline{s}_{(5,4,1)+(-6,1,0)} \right)
\]

(by Proposition 11.2 (c))

\[
+ a_3 \overline{s}_{(5,4,1)+(-6,0,0)}
\]

(by Proposition 11.2 (b))

\[
= a_1 \overline{s}_{(4,1,1)} - a_2 \overline{s}_{(3,1,1)}.
\]

Note that this is not yet an expansion of $\overline{s}_{\mu}$ in the basis $(\overline{s}_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_k,n}$. Indeed, we still have a term $\overline{s}_{(4,1,1)}$ on the right hand side which has $(4, 1, 1) \notin P_{k,n}$. But this term can, in turn, be rewritten using Theorem 11.12 and so on until we end up with an expansion of $\overline{s}_{\mu}$ in the basis $(\overline{s}_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_k,n}$, namely

\[
\overline{s}_{(5,4,1)} = -a_2 \overline{s}_{(3,1,1)} + a_1 a_2 \overline{s}_{(1,1)} - a_1 a_3 \overline{s}_{(1)}.
\]

As we saw in this example, when we apply Theorem 11.12, some of the $\overline{s}_{\mu+\tau}$ addends on the right hand side may be 0 (by Proposition 11.2 (b)). Once these addends are removed, the remaining addends can be rewritten in the form $\pm \overline{s}_\lambda$ for some $\lambda \in P_k$ satisfying $|\lambda| < |\mu|$ (using Proposition 11.2 (c)). The resulting sum is multiplicity-free – in the sense that no $\overline{s}_\lambda$ occurs more than once in it. (This is not difficult to check, but would take us too far afield.) However, this sum is (in general) not an expansion of $\overline{s}_{\mu}$ in the basis $(\overline{s}_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ yet, because it often contains terms $\overline{s}_\lambda$ with $\lambda \notin P_{k,n}$. If we keep applying Theorem 11.12 multiple times until we reach an expansion of $\overline{s}_{\mu}$ in the basis $(\overline{s}_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$, then this latter expansion may contain multiplicities: For example, for $n = 6$ and $k = 3$,...
we have
\[ s_{(4,4,3)} = -a_2s_{(3,3)} + a_3s_{(3,2)} + a_3^2s_{(3)} - 2a_1a_2s_{(2)} + a_2^2s_{(1)}. \]

We owe the reader an explanation of why we call Theorem 11.12 a “rim hook algorithm”. It owes this name to the fact that it generalizes the “rim hook algorithm” for quantum cohomology [BeCiFu99, §2, Main Lemma] (which can be obtained from it with some work by setting \(a_i = 0\) for all \(i < k\)). Nevertheless, it does not visibly involve any rim hooks itself. I am, in fact, unaware of a way to restate it in the language of Young diagrams; the operation \(\mu \mapsto \mu + \tau\) for \(\tau \in V\) resembles both the removal of an \(n\)-rim hook (since it lowers the first entry by \(n\)) and the addition of a vertical strip (since it increases each of the remaining entries by 0 or 1), but it cannot be directly stated as one of these operations followed by the other.

We shall prove Theorem 11.12 by deriving it from an identity in \(S\):

**Theorem 11.14.** Let \(\mu \in P_k\) be such that \(\mu_1 > n - k\). Then,
\[ s_{\mu} = \sum_{j=1}^{k} (-1)^{k-j} h_{n-k+j} \sum_{\substack{\tau \in V; \\
-|\tau| = n - k+j}} s_{\mu + \tau}. \]

Our proof of this identity, in turn, will rely on the following combinatorial lemmas:

**Lemma 11.15.** Let \(j \in \{2, 3, \ldots, k\}\). Let \(\Delta\) be the vector \((0, 0, \ldots, 0, 1, 0, 0, \ldots, 0) \in \mathbb{Z}^k\), where 1 is the \(j\)-th entry.

- (a) If \(\tau \in V\) satisfies \(\tau_j = 0\), then \(\tau + \Delta \in V\) and \((\tau + \Delta)_j = 1\).
- (b) If \(\tau \in V\) satisfies \(\tau_j = 1\), then \(\tau - \Delta \in V\) and \((\tau - \Delta)_j = 0\).
- (c) If \(\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k\) satisfies \(\nu_j \neq 0\), then \(\nu - \Delta \in \mathbb{N}^k\).
- (d) If \(\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k\), then \(\nu + \Delta \in \mathbb{N}^k\).

**Proof of Lemma 11.15** We have \(j \in \{2, 3, \ldots, k\}\), thus \(j \neq 1\).

We have \(\Delta = (0, 0, \ldots, 0, 1, 0, 0, \ldots, 0) \in \mathbb{N}^k\). Thus, \(\Delta_j = 1\) and
\[ (\Delta_i = 0 \text{ for each } i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\} \text{ satisfying } i \neq j). \tag{127} \]

Applying (127) to \(i = 1\), we obtain \(\Delta_1 = 0\) (since \(1 \neq j\)).

(a) Let \(\tau \in V\) be such that \(\tau_j = 0\).

We have \(\tau \in V\). According to the definition of \(V\), this means that \(\tau\) is a \(k\)-tuple \((-n, \tau_2, \tau_3, \ldots, \tau_k) \in \mathbb{Z}^k\) satisfying (125). In other words, \(\tau \in \mathbb{Z}^k\) and \(\tau_1 = -n\) and
\[ (\tau_i \in \{0,1\} \text{ for each } i \in \{2,3,\ldots,k\}). \tag{128} \]
Define a $k$-tuple $\sigma \in \mathbb{Z}^k$ by $\sigma = \tau + \Delta$. Thus, $\sigma_1 = (\tau + \Delta)_1 = \tau_1 + \Delta_1 = n$.

Furthermore, from $\sigma = \tau + \Delta$, we obtain $\sigma_j = (\tau + \Delta)_j = \tau_j + \Delta_j = 1 \in \{0,1\}$.

Next, we have $\sigma_i \in \{0,1\}$ for each $i \in \{2,3,\ldots,k\}$

Altogether, we thus have shown that $\sigma \in \mathbb{Z}^k$ and $\sigma_1 = n$ and

$$(\sigma_i \in \{0,1\} \quad \text{for each } i \in \{2,3,\ldots,k\}). \tag{129}$$

In other words, $\sigma$ is a $k$-tuple $(-n, \sigma_2, \sigma_3, \ldots, \sigma_k) \in \mathbb{Z}^k$ satisfying (129). In other words, $\sigma \in V$ (by the definition of $V$). Thus, $\tau + \Delta = \sigma \in V$. So we have proven that $\tau + \Delta \in V$ and $(\tau + \Delta)_i = 1$. Thus, Lemma 11.15 (a) is proven.

(b) The proof of Lemma 11.15 (b) is analogous to the above proof of Lemma 11.15 (a), and is left to the reader.

(c) Let $\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k$ be such that $\nu_j \neq 0$. We must prove that $\nu - \Delta \in \mathbb{N}^k$.

We have $\nu_j \in \mathbb{N}$ (since $\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k$). Hence, from $\nu_j \neq 0$, we conclude that $\nu_j \geq 1$. Thus, $\nu_j - 1 \in \mathbb{N}$. Also, the entries $\nu_1, \nu_2, \ldots, \nu_{j-1}, \nu_{j+1}, \nu_{j+2}, \ldots, \nu_k$ of $\nu$ belong to $\mathbb{N}$ (since $\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k$).

Recall that $\Delta$ is the vector $(0,0,\ldots,0,1,0,0,\ldots,0) \in \mathbb{Z}^k$, where 1 is the $j$-th entry. Hence,

$$\nu - \Delta = \nu - (0,0,\ldots,0,1,0,0,\ldots,0)$$
$$= (\nu_1, \nu_2, \ldots, \nu_{j-1}, \nu_j - 1, \nu_{j+1}, \nu_{j+2}, \ldots, \nu_k) \in \mathbb{N}^k$$

(since $\nu_j - 1 \in \mathbb{N}$ and since the entries $\nu_1, \nu_2, \ldots, \nu_{j-1}, \nu_{j+1}, \nu_{j+2}, \ldots, \nu_k$ of $\nu$ belong to $\mathbb{N}$). This proves Lemma 11.15 (c).

(d) Let $\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k$. Also, $\Delta \in \mathbb{N}^k$. Thus, $\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k + \Delta \in \mathbb{N}^k$. This proves Lemma 11.15 (d).

\[\]  

Lemma 11.16. Let $\gamma \in \mathbb{Z}^k$. Then,

$$\sum_{\tau \in V} \sum_{\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k : \nu \tau = \gamma} (-1)^{n+|\tau|} = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \gamma = 0; \\ 0, & \text{if } \gamma \neq 0. \end{cases}$$

(Recall that 0 denotes the vector \((0,0,\ldots,0)\) with \(k\) zeroes.)

\[\]  

Proof. Let $i \in \{2,3,\ldots,k\}$. We must prove $\sigma_i \in \{0,1\}$.

If $i = j$, then this follows from $\sigma_i \in \{0,1\}$. Hence, for the rest of this proof, we WLOG assume that $i \neq j$. Thus, \(127\) yields $\Delta_i = 0$. Now, from $\sigma = \tau + \Delta$, we obtain $\sigma_i = (\tau + \Delta)_i = \tau_i + \Delta_i = \tau_i \in \{0,1\}$ (by (128)). Qed.
Proof of Lemma\[11.16\] Let $Q$ be the set of all pairs $(\tau, \nu) \in V \times \mathbb{N}^k$ satisfying $|\nu| = -|\tau|$ and $\nu + \tau = \gamma$. We have the following equality of summation signs:

$$
\sum_{\tau \in V} \sum_{\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k; \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{t} = \gamma} = \sum_{(\tau, \nu) \in Q} = \sum_{(\tau, \nu) \in Q}
$$

(since $Q$ is the set of all pairs $(\tau, \nu) \in V \times \mathbb{N}^k$ satisfying $|\nu| = -|\tau|$ and $\nu + \tau = \gamma$).

We are in one of the following three cases:

Case 1: We have $(\gamma_2, \gamma_3, \ldots, \gamma_k) \neq (0, 0, \ldots, 0)$.
Case 2: We have $(\gamma_2, \gamma_3, \ldots, \gamma_k) = (0, 0, \ldots, 0)$ and $\gamma_1 \neq 0$.
Case 3: We have $(\gamma_2, \gamma_3, \ldots, \gamma_k) = (0, 0, \ldots, 0)$ and $\gamma_1 = 0$.

Let us first consider Case 1. In this case, we have $(\gamma_2, \gamma_3, \ldots, \gamma_k) \neq (0, 0, \ldots, 0)$.

In other words, there exists a $j \in \{2, 3, \ldots, k\}$ such that $\gamma_j \neq 0$. Consider such a $j$.

Clearly, $\gamma \neq 0$ (since $\gamma_j \neq 0$). Hence, \{1, if $\gamma = 0$; 0, if $\gamma \neq 0\} = 0$.

Let $\Delta$ be the vector $(0, 0, \ldots, 0, 1, 0, 0, \ldots, 0) \in \mathbb{Z}^k$, where 1 is the $j$-th entry. Clearly, $\Delta \in \mathbb{N}^k$ and $|\Delta| = 1$.

Let $Q_0$ be the set of all $(\tau, \nu) \in Q$ satisfying $\tau_j = 0$. (Recall that $\tau_j$ denotes the $j$-th entry of the $k$-tuple $\tau \in V \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^k$.) Let $Q_1$ be the set of all $(\tau, \nu) \in Q$ satisfying $\tau_j = 1$. Each $(\tau, \nu) \in Q$ satisfies $(\tau, \nu) \in V \times \mathbb{N}^k$ (by the definition of $Q$) and thus $\tau \in V$ and thus $\tau_j \in \{0, 1\}$ (by (125), applied to $i = j$). In other words, each $(\tau, \nu) \in Q$ satisfies either $\tau_j = 0$ or $\tau_j = 1$ (but not both at the same time). In other words, each $(\tau, \nu) \in Q$ belongs to either $Q_0$ or $Q_1$ (but not both at the same time).

For each $(\tau, \nu) \in Q_0$, we have $(\tau + \Delta, \nu - \Delta) \in Q_1$ 27 Thus, the map

$$
Q_0 \rightarrow Q_1, \quad (\tau, \nu) \mapsto (\tau + \Delta, \nu - \Delta)
$$

27**Proof.** Let $(\tau, \nu) \in Q_0$. According to the definition of $Q_0$, this means that $(\tau, \nu) \in Q$ and $\tau_j = 0$.

We have $(\tau, \nu) \in Q$. According to the definition of $Q$, this means that $(\tau, \nu) \in V \times \mathbb{N}^k$ and $|\nu| = -|\tau|$ and $\nu + \tau = \gamma$.

From $(\tau, \nu) \in V \times \mathbb{N}^k$, we obtain $\tau \in V$ and $\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k$.

From $\nu + \tau = \gamma$, we obtain $(\nu + \tau)_j = \gamma_j$. Hence, $\gamma_j = (\nu + \tau)_j = \nu_j + \tau_j = \nu_j$. Thus, $v_j = \gamma_j \neq 0$. Thus, Lemma \[11.15\](c) yields $v - \Delta \in \mathbb{N}^k$. Also, Lemma \[11.15\](a) yields that $\tau + \Delta \in V$ and $(\tau + \Delta)_j = 1$. Also, any two $k$-tuples $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^k$ and $\beta \in \mathbb{N}^k$ satisfy $|\alpha + \beta| = |\alpha| + |\beta|$ and $|\alpha - \beta| = |\alpha| - |\beta|$. Thus, $|\tau + \Delta| = |\tau| + |\Delta|$ and $|\nu - \Delta| = |\nu| - |\Delta| = -|\tau| - |\Delta| = -(|\tau| + |\Delta|) = -|\tau + \Delta|$. Also, $(\nu - \Delta) + (\tau + \Delta) = \nu + \tau = \gamma$.

From $\tau + \Delta \in V$ and $\nu - \Delta \in \mathbb{N}^k$ and $|\nu - \Delta| = -|\tau + \Delta|$ and $(\nu - \Delta) + (\tau + \Delta) = \gamma$, we obtain $(\tau + \Delta, \nu - \Delta) \in Q$ (by the definition of $Q$). Combining this with $(\tau + \Delta)_j = 1$, we obtain $(\tau + \Delta, \nu - \Delta) \in Q_1$ (by the definition of $Q_1$), qed.
is well-defined. For each \((\tau, \nu) \in Q_1\), we have \((\tau - \Delta, \nu + \Delta) \in Q_0\). Thus, the map
\[
Q_1 \to Q_0, \quad (\tau, \nu) \mapsto (\tau - \Delta, \nu + \Delta)
\]
is well-defined.

The two maps (131) and (132) are mutually inverse (this is clear from their definitions), and thus are bijections. Hence, in particular, the map (131) is a bijection.

Also, each \(\tau \in \mathbb{Z}^k\) satisfies
\[
|\tau + \Delta| = |\tau| + |\Delta| = 1
\]

and thus
\[
(-1)^{n+|\tau+\Delta|} = (-1)^{n+|\tau|+1} = -(-1)^{n+|\tau|}. \tag{133}
\]

Now, recall that \(Q_0\) and \(Q_1\) are two subsets of \(Q\) such that each \((\tau, \nu) \in Q\) belongs to either \(Q_0\) or \(Q_1\) (but not both at the same time). In other words, \(Q_0\) and \(Q_1\) are two disjoint subsets of \(Q\) whose union is the whole set \(Q\). Hence, we

---

**Proof.** Let \((\tau, \nu) \in Q_1\). According to the definition of \(Q_1\), this means that \((\tau, \nu) \in Q\) and \(\tau = 1\).

We have \((\tau, \nu) \in Q\). According to the definition of \(Q\), this means that \((\tau, \nu) \in V \times \mathbb{N}^k\) and \(|\nu| = -|\tau|\) and \(\nu + \tau = \gamma\).

From \((\tau, \nu) \in V \times \mathbb{N}^k\), we obtain \(\tau \in V\) and \(v \in \mathbb{N}^k\).

Lemma 11.15 (d) yields \(v + \Delta \in \mathbb{N}^k\). Also, Lemma 11.15 (b) yields that \(\tau - \Delta \in V\) and \((\tau - \Delta) \in 0\). Also, any two \(k\)-tuples \(\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^k\) and \(\beta \in \mathbb{N}^k\) satisfy \(|\alpha + \beta| = |\alpha| + |\beta|\) and \(|\alpha - \beta| = |\alpha| - |\beta|\). Thus, \(|\tau - \Delta| = |\tau| - |\Delta|\) and \(|\nu + \Delta| = |\nu| + |\Delta| + \gamma = -|\tau| - |\Delta|\). Also, \((\nu + \Delta) + (\tau - \Delta) = \nu + \tau = \gamma\).

From \(\tau - \Delta \in V\) and \(\nu + \Delta \in \mathbb{N}^k\) and \(|\nu + \Delta| = -|\tau - \Delta|\) and \((\nu + \Delta) + (\tau - \Delta) = \gamma\), we obtain \((\tau - \Delta, \nu + \Delta) \in Q\) (by the definition of \(Q\)). Combining this with \((\tau - \Delta) \in 0\), we obtain \((\tau - \Delta, \nu + \Delta) \in Q_0\) (by the definition of \(Q_0\)), qed.
can split the sum \[ \sum_{(\tau,\nu) \in Q} (-1)^{n+|\tau|} \] as follows:

\[
\sum_{(\tau,\nu) \in Q} (-1)^{n+|\tau|} = \sum_{(\tau,\nu) \in Q_0} (-1)^{n+|\tau|} + \sum_{(\tau,\nu) \in Q_1} (-1)^{n+|\tau|} \\
= \sum_{(\tau,\nu) \in Q_0} (-1)^{n+|\tau+\Delta|} \\
\text{(here, we have substituted}\ (\tau+\Delta,\nu-\Delta)\ \text{for}
\text{(}\tau,\nu)\ \text{in the sum, since the map}\ (131)\ \text{is a bijection)}
\]

\[
= \sum_{(\tau,\nu) \in Q_0} (-1)^{n+|\tau|} + \sum_{(\tau,\nu) \in Q_0} \left(-(-1)^{n+|\tau|}\right) \\
= \sum_{(\tau,\nu) \in Q_0} (-1)^{n+|\tau|} - \sum_{(\tau,\nu) \in Q_0} (-1)^{n+|\tau|} = 0.
\]

Now, (130) yields

\[
\sum_{\tau \in V} \sum_{\nu \in N^k; \ \nu + \tau = \gamma} (-1)^{n+|\tau|} = \sum_{(\tau,\nu) \in Q} (-1)^{n+|\tau|} = 0 = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \gamma = 0; \\ 0, & \text{if } \gamma \neq 0 \end{cases}
\]

(since \(1, \text{ if } \gamma = 0; \\ 0, \text{ if } \gamma \neq 0 = 0\). Thus, Lemma 11.16 is proven in Case 1.

Let us now consider Case 2. In this case, we have \((\gamma_2, \gamma_3, \ldots, \gamma_k) = (0,0,\ldots,0)\) and \(\gamma_1 \neq 0\). From \(\gamma_1 \neq 0\), we obtain \(\gamma \neq 0\) and thus \(1, \text{ if } \gamma = 0; \\ 0, \text{ if } \gamma \neq 0 = 0\).
Now, $Q = \emptyset$ \footnote{But (130) yields} \[\sum_{\tau \in V} \sum_{\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k, \quad |v| = -|\tau|; \quad v + \tau = \gamma} (-1)^{n+|\tau|} = \sum_{(\tau, \nu) \in Q} (-1)^{n+|\tau|} = \text{(empty sum)} \quad \text{(since } Q = \emptyset)\]

\[= 0 = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \gamma = 0; \\ 0, & \text{if } \gamma \neq 0 \end{cases}\]

(since \(\begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \gamma = 0; \\ 0, & \text{if } \gamma \neq 0 \end{cases} = 0\)). Thus, Lemma 11.16 is proven in Case 2.

Let us finally consider Case 3. In this case, we have \((\gamma_2, \gamma_3, \ldots, \gamma_k) = (0, 0, \ldots, 0)\)

\begin{proof}
Let \((\tau, \nu) \in Q\). We shall derive a contradiction.

Indeed, we have \((\tau, \nu) \in Q\). According to the definition of \(Q\), this means that \((\tau, \nu) \in V \times \mathbb{N}^k\) and \(|v| = -|\tau|\) and \(v + \tau = \gamma\).

From \((\tau, \nu) \in V \times \mathbb{N}^k\), we obtain \(\tau \in V\) and \(\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k\).

We have \(\tau \in V\). According to the definition of \(V\), this means that \(\tau\) is a \(k\)-tuple \((-n, \tau_2, \tau_3, \ldots, \tau_k) \in \mathbb{Z}^k\) satisfying (125). In other words, \(\tau \in \mathbb{Z}^k\) and \(\tau_1 = -n\) and the condition (125) holds.

Now, fix \(j \in \{2, 3, \ldots, k\}\). Then, \(\tau_j \in \{0, 1\}\) (by (125), applied to \(i = j\)). Hence, \(\tau_j \geq 0\).

Also, \(\nu_j \in \mathbb{N}\) (since \(\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k\)), so that \(\nu_j \geq 0\). But \((\gamma_2, \gamma_3, \ldots, \gamma_k) = (0, 0, \ldots, 0)\), and thus \(\gamma_j = 0\) (since \(j \in \{2, 3, \ldots, k\}\)). But \(\gamma = v + \tau\), and thus \(\gamma_j = (v + \tau)_j = \nu_j + \tau_j\). Hence, \(\nu_j + \tau_j = \gamma_j = 0\), so that \(\nu_j = -\tau_j \leq 0\). Combining this with \(\nu_j \geq 0\), we obtain \(\nu_j = 0\).

Hence, \(\nu_j = -\tau_j\) rewrites as \(0 = -\tau_j\), so that \(\tau_j = 0\).

Now, forget that we fixed \(j\). Thus, we have shown that each \(j \in \{2, 3, \ldots, k\}\) satisfies

\[\nu_j = 0 \quad \text{(134)}\]

and

\[\tau_j = 0. \quad \text{(135)}\]

Now,

\[|\tau| = \tau_1 + \tau_2 + \cdots + \tau_k = \sum_{j=1}^k \tau_j = \tau_1 + \sum_{j=2}^k \tau_j = \tau_1 = -n, \quad \text{(by (135))}\]

so that \(-|\tau| = n\). Furthermore,

\[|v| = \nu_1 + \nu_2 + \cdots + \nu_k = \sum_{j=1}^k \nu_j = \nu_1 + \sum_{j=2}^k \nu_j = \nu_1, \quad \text{(by (134))}\]

so that \(\nu_1 = |v| = -|\tau| = n\).

Now, from \(\gamma = v + \tau\), we obtain \(\gamma_1 = (v + \tau)_1 = \nu_1 + \tau_1 = n + (-n) = 0\). This contradicts \(\gamma_1 \neq 0\).

Now, forget that we fixed \((\tau, \nu)\). We thus have found a contradiction for each \((\tau, \nu) \in Q\).

Thus, there exists no \((\tau, \nu) \in Q\). In other words, \(Q = \emptyset\).

\end{proof}
and \( \gamma_1 = 0 \). Combining these two equalities, we obtain \( \gamma_i = 0 \) for all \( i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\} \). In other words, \( \gamma = 0 \). Hence, \( \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \gamma = 0; \\ 0, & \text{if } \gamma \neq 0 \end{cases} = 1. \)

Now, define two \( k \)-tuples \( \tau_0 \in \mathbb{Z}^k \) and \( \nu_0 \in \mathbb{Z}^k \) by

\[
\tau_0 = (-n, 0, 0, \ldots, 0) \quad \text{and} \quad \nu_0 = (n, 0, 0, \ldots, 0).
\]

Clearly, \( \tau_0 \in V \) (by the definition of \( V \)) and \( \nu_0 \in \mathbb{N}^k \) and \( |\tau_0| = -n \) and \( |\nu_0| = n \) and \( \nu_0 + \tau_0 = 0 \).

From \( \tau_0 \in V \) and \( \nu_0 \in \mathbb{N}^k \), we obtain \( (\tau_0, \nu_0) \in V \times \mathbb{N}^k \). Also, \( |\nu_0| = -|\tau_0| \) (since \( |\nu_0| + |\tau_0| = n + (-n) = 0 \)) and \( \nu_0 + \tau_0 = 0 = \gamma \). Thus, we have shown that \( (\tau_0, \nu_0) \in V \times \mathbb{N}^k \) and \( |\nu_0| = -|\tau_0| \) and \( \nu_0 + \tau_0 = \gamma \). In other words, \( (\tau_0, \nu_0) \in Q \) (by the definition of \( Q \)). In other words, \( \{(\tau_0, \nu_0)\} \subseteq Q \).

On the other hand, \( Q \subseteq \{(\tau_0, \nu_0)\} \). Combining this with \( \{(\tau_0, \nu_0)\} \subseteq Q \), we obtain \( Q = \{(\tau_0, \nu_0)\} \).

\[30\] Proof. Let \( (\tau, \nu) \in Q \). We shall prove that \( (\tau, \nu) = (\tau_0, \nu_0) \).

Most of the following argument is copypasted from the previous footnote.

We have \( (\tau, \nu) \in Q \). According to the definition of \( Q \), this means that \( (\tau, \nu) \in V \times \mathbb{N}^k \) and \( |\nu| = -|\tau| \) and \( \nu + \tau = \gamma \).

From \( (\tau, \nu) \in V \times \mathbb{N}^k \), we obtain \( \tau \in V \) and \( \nu \in \mathbb{N}^k \).

We have \( \tau \in V \). According to the definition of \( V \), this means that \( \tau \) is a \( k \)-tuple \((-n, \tau_2, \tau_3, \ldots, \tau_k) \in \mathbb{Z}^k \) satisfying (125). In other words, \( \tau \in \mathbb{Z}^k \) and \( \tau_1 = -n \) and the condition (125) holds.

Now, fix \( j \in \{2, 3, \ldots, k\} \). Then, \( \tau_j \in \{0, 1\} \) (by (125), applied to \( i = j \)). Hence, \( \tau_j \geq 0 \).

Also, \( \nu_j \in \mathbb{N} \) (since \( \nu \in \mathbb{N}^k \)), so that \( \nu_j \geq 0 \). But \( (\gamma_2, \ldots, \gamma_k) = (0, 0, \ldots, 0) \), and thus \( \gamma_j = 0 \) (since \( j \in \{2, 3, \ldots, k\} \)). But \( \gamma = \nu + \tau \), and thus \( \gamma_j = (\nu + \tau)_j = \nu_j + \tau_j \). Hence, \( \nu_j + \tau_j = \gamma_j = 0 \), so that \( \nu_j = -\tau_j \leq 0 \). Combining this with \( \nu_j \geq 0 \), we obtain \( \nu_j = 0 \).

Hence, \( \nu_j = -\tau_j \) rewrites as \( 0 = -\tau_j \), so that \( \tau_j = 0 \).

Now, forget that we fixed \( j \). Thus, we have shown that each \( j \in \{2, 3, \ldots, k\} \) satisfies \( \tau_j = 0 \). In other words, \( (\tau_2, \tau_3, \ldots, \tau_k) = (0, 0, \ldots, 0) \). Combining this with \( \tau_1 = -n \), we obtain \( \tau = (-n, 0, 0, \ldots, 0) = \tau_0 \).

From \( \nu + \tau = \gamma \), we obtain \( \nu = \gamma - \tau = \gamma - \tau_0 = \nu_0 \) (since \( \nu_0 + \tau_0 = \gamma \)). Combining this with \( \tau = \tau_0 \), we obtain \( (\tau, \nu) = (\tau_0, \nu_0) \in \{(\tau_0, \nu_0)\} \).

Now, forget that we fixed \( (\tau, \nu) \). We thus have proven that \( (\tau, \nu) \in \{(\tau_0, \nu_0)\} \) for each \( (\tau, \nu) \in Q \). In other words, \( Q \subseteq \{(\tau_0, \nu_0)\} \).
But (130) yields
\[
\sum_{\tau \in V} \sum_{\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k; \nu + \tau = \gamma} (-1)^{n+|\tau|} = \sum_{(\tau, \nu) \in Q} (-1)^{n+|\tau|} = (-1)^{n+|\tau_0|} \quad \text{(since } Q = \{(\tau_0, v_0)\})
\]
\[
= (-1)^0 \quad \text{(since } n + |\tau_0| = n + (-n) = 0)
\]
\[
= 1 = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \gamma = 0; \\ 0, & \text{if } \gamma \neq 0 \end{cases}
\]
(since \(\begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \gamma = 0; \\ 0, & \text{if } \gamma \neq 0 \end{cases} = 1\)). Thus, Lemma 11.16 is proven in Case 3.

We have now proven Lemma 11.16 in each of the three Cases 1, 2 and 3. Hence, Lemma 11.16 always holds. \(\square\)

**Proof of Theorem 11.14.** Each \(\tau \in V\) satisfies 
\(-|\tau| \in \{n - k + 1, n - k + 2, \ldots, n\}\) (by Proposition 11.11). Thus, we have the following equality of summation signs:
\[
\sum_{\tau \in V} = \sum_{i=n-k+1}^{n} \sum_{\tau \in V; -|\tau| = i} = \sum_{j=1}^{k} \sum_{\tau \in V; -|\tau| = n-k+j} \quad \text{(136)}
\]
(here, we have substituted \(n - k + j\) for \(i\) in the outer sum). Now,
\[
\sum_{j=1}^{k} (-1)^{k-j} h_{n-k+j} \sum_{\tau \in V; -|\tau| = n-k+j} s_{\mu + \tau}
\]
\[
= \sum_{j=1}^{k} \sum_{\tau \in V; -|\tau| = n-k+j} (-1)^{k-j} h_{n-k+j} s_{\mu + \tau}
\]
\[
= \sum_{\tau \in V} (-1)^{|\tau|} h_{-|\tau|} s_{\mu + \tau} \quad \text{(137)}
\]

But each \(\tau \in V\) satisfies
\[
h_{-|\tau|} s_{\mu + \tau} = \sum_{\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k; |\nu| = -|\tau|} s_{\mu + (\nu + \tau)} \quad \text{(138)}
\]

**[Proof of (138):** Let \(\tau \in V\). According to the definition of \(V\), this means that \(\tau\) is a \(k\)-tuple \((-n, \tau_2, \tau_3, \ldots, \tau_k) \in \mathbb{Z}^k\) satisfying (125). In other words, \(\tau \in \mathbb{Z}^k\) and \(\tau_1 = -n\) and the relation (125) holds.}
Proposition 11.11 yields $-|\tau| \in \{n - k + 1, n - k + 2, \ldots, n\} \subseteq \mathbb{N}$.

Also, $\mu \in P_k \subseteq \mathbb{N}^k$; hence,

$$\mu_i \geq 0 \quad \text{for each } i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}. \quad (139)$$

Also, $\rho_1 = k - 1$ (by the definition of $\rho$) and $\rho \in \mathbb{N}^k$ (likewise). Now,

$$(\mu + \tau + \rho)_1 = \underbrace{\mu_1}_{> n - k} + \underbrace{\tau_1}_{= -n} + \underbrace{\rho_1}_{= k - 1} > (n - k) + (-n) + (k - 1) = -1.$$ 

Thus, $(\mu + \tau + \rho)_1 \geq 0$ (since $(\mu + \tau + \rho)_1$ is an integer). In other words, $(\mu + \tau + \rho)_1 \in \mathbb{N}$. Furthermore, for each $i \in \{2, 3, \ldots, k\}$, we have

$$(\mu + \tau + \rho)_i = \underbrace{\mu_i}_{\in \mathbb{N}} + \underbrace{\tau_i}_{\in \mathbb{N}^k} + \underbrace{\rho_i}_{\in \mathbb{N}^k} \in \mathbb{N}.$$ 

This also holds for $i = 1$ (since $(\mu + \tau + \rho)_1 \in \mathbb{N}$). Thus, we have $(\mu + \tau + \rho)_i \in \mathbb{N}$ for each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$. In other words, $\mu + \tau + \rho \in \mathbb{N}^k$. Hence, Theorem 11.7 (applied to $\lambda = \mu + \tau$ and $m = -|\tau|$) yields

$$s_{\mu + \tau} h_{-|\tau|} = \sum_{v \in \mathbb{N}^k; \ |v| = -|\tau|} s_{\mu + \tau + v} = \sum_{v \in \mathbb{N}^k; \ |v| = -|\tau|} s_{\mu + (v + \tau)}.$$ 

Thus,

$$h_{-|\tau|} s_{\mu + \tau} = s_{\mu + \tau} h_{-|\tau|} = \sum_{v \in \mathbb{N}^k; \ |v| = -|\tau|} s_{\mu + (v + \tau)}.$$ 

This proves (138).
Now, (137) becomes

\[ \sum_{j=1}^{k} (-1)^{k-j} h_{n-k+j} \sum_{\tau \in \mathcal{V}; -|\tau|=n-k+j} s_{\mu+\tau} = \sum_{\tau \in \mathcal{V}} (-1)^{|\tau|} \frac{h_{n-|\tau|} s_{\mu+\tau}}{s_{\mu+(\nu+\tau)}} = \sum_{\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k; |\nu|=-|\tau|} s_{\mu+(\nu+\tau)} (\text{by (138)}) \]

\[ = \sum_{\tau \in \mathcal{V}} (-1)^{|\tau|} \sum_{\gamma \in \mathbb{Z}^k} s_{\mu+\gamma} = \sum_{\tau \in \mathcal{V}} (-1)^{|\tau|} \sum_{\gamma \in \mathbb{Z}^k \sum_{\nu \in \mathbb{N}^k; |\nu|=-|\tau|; \nu+\tau=\gamma}} s_{\mu+\gamma} \]

\[ = \sum_{\gamma \in \mathbb{Z}^k} \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } \gamma = 0; \\
0, & \text{if } \gamma \neq 0 \end{cases} \] (by Lemma 11.16)

\[ = s_{\mu+0} = s_{\mu}. \]

This proves Theorem 11.14 \[ \square \]

Proof of Theorem 11.12 Theorem 11.14 yields

\[ s_{\mu} = \sum_{j=1}^{k} (-1)^{k-j} h_{n-k+j} \sum_{\tau \in \mathcal{V}; -|\tau|=n-k+j} s_{\mu+\tau} \equiv \sum_{j=1}^{k} (-1)^{k-j} a_j \sum_{\tau \in \mathcal{V}; -|\tau|=n-k+j} s_{\mu+\tau} \mod I. \]

(by 15)
Thus, in $S/I$, we have

$$s_\mu = \sum_{j=1}^{k} (-1)^{k-j} a_j \sum_{\tau \in \nu; -|\tau|=n-k+j} s_{\mu+\tau} = \sum_{j=1}^{k} (-1)^{k-j} a_j \sum_{\tau \in \nu; -|\tau|=n-k+j} s_{\mu+\tau}.$$ 

This proves Theorem \[11.12\] \qed

12. Deforming symmetric functions

12.1. The basis theorem

**Convention 12.1.** Let $R$ be any commutative ring. Let $(a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_p)$ be any list of elements of $R$. Then, $\langle a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_p \rangle_R$ shall denote the ideal of $R$ generated by these elements $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_p$. When it is clear from the context what $R$ is, we will simply write $\langle a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_p \rangle$ for this ideal (thus omitting the mention of $R$); for example, when we write "$R/\langle a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_p \rangle$", we will always mean $R/\langle a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_p \rangle_R$.

We have so far studied a quotient $S/I$ of the ring $S$ of symmetric polynomials in $k$ variables $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k$. But $S$ itself is a quotient of a larger ring – the ring $\Lambda$ of symmetric functions in infinitely many variables. More precisely, $S \cong \Lambda / \langle e_{k+1}, e_{k+2}, e_{k+3}, \ldots \rangle$ (and the canonical $k$-algebra isomorphism $S \rightarrow \Lambda / \langle e_{k+1}, e_{k+2}, e_{k+3}, \ldots \rangle$ sends $e_1, e_2, e_3, \ldots$ to $e_1, e_2, \ldots, e_k, 0, 0, 0, \ldots$). Hence, at least when $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k \in k$, we have

$$S/I \cong \Lambda / \langle h_{n-k+1} - a_1, h_{n-k+2} - a_2, \ldots, h_n - a_k \rangle + \langle e_{k+1}, e_{k+2}, e_{k+3}, \ldots \rangle.$$ 

If $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k$ are themselves elements of $S$, then we need to lift them to elements $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k$ of $\Lambda$ in order for such an isomorphism to hold.

This suggests a further generalization: What if we replace $e_{k+1}, e_{k+2}, e_{k+3}, \ldots$ by $e_{k+1} - b_1, e_{k+2} - b_2, e_{k+3} - b_3, \ldots$ for some $b_1, b_2, b_3, \ldots \in \Lambda$? Let us take a look at this generalization:

**Definition 12.2.** Throughout Section \[12\] we shall use the following notations:

Let $\Lambda$ be the ring of symmetric functions in infinitely many indeterminates $x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots$ over $k$. (See [GriRei20] Chapter 2 for more about this ring $\Lambda$.) Let $e_m$ and $h_m$ be the elementary symmetric functions and the complete homogeneous symmetric functions in $\Lambda$. For each partition $\lambda$, let $s_\lambda$ be the Schur function in $\Lambda$ corresponding to $\lambda$.

For each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$, let $a_i$ be an element of $\Lambda$ with degree $< n - k + i$. 

\[126\]
For each $i \in \{1, 2, 3, \ldots\}$, let $b_i$ be an element of $\Lambda$ with degree $< k + i$.
Let $K$ be the ideal
\[
\langle h_{n-k+1} - a_1, h_{n-k+2} - a_2, \ldots, h_n - a_k \rangle + \langle e_{k+1} - b_1, e_{k+2} - b_2, e_{k+3} - b_3, \ldots \rangle
\]
of $\Lambda$. For each $f \in \Lambda$, we let $\overline{f}$ denote the projection of $f$ onto the quotient $\Lambda/K$.

**Theorem 12.3.** The $k$-module $\Lambda/K$ is a free $k$-module with basis $(\overline{s}^n)_{\lambda \in P_k}$.

### 12.2. Spanning

Proving Theorem 12.3 will take us a while. We start with some easy observations:

- For each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$, we have
  \[
  a_i = (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < n - k + i).
  \]
  (This follows from the definition of $a_i$.)

- For each $i \in \{1, 2, 3, \ldots\}$, we have
  \[
  b_i = (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < k + i).
  \]
  (This follows from the definition of $b_i$.)

- For each $i \in \{1, 2, 3, \ldots\}$, we have
  \[
  e_{k+i} - b_i \in K
  \]
  (because of how $K$ was defined). In other words, for each $i \in \{1, 2, 3, \ldots\}$, we have
  \[
  e_{k+i} \equiv b_i \mod K.
  \]
  Substituting $j - k$ for $i$ in this statement, we obtain the following: For each $j \in \{k + 1, k + 2, k + 3, \ldots\}$, we have
  \[
  e_j \equiv b_{j-k} \mod K.
  \]

- For each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$, we have
  \[
  h_{n-k+i} - a_i \in K
  \]
  (because of how $K$ was defined). In other words, for each $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$, we have
  \[
  h_{n-k+i} \equiv a_i \mod K.
  \]
  Substituting $j - (n - k)$ for $i$ in this statement, we obtain the following: For each $j \in \{n - k + 1, n - k + 2, \ldots, n\}$, we have
  \[
  h_j \equiv a_{j-(n-k)} \mod K.
  \]
Let $\text{Par}$ denote the set of all partitions.

For each $m \in \mathbb{Z}$, we let $\Lambda_{\deg \leq m}$ denote the $k$-submodule of $\Lambda$ that consists of all symmetric functions $f \in \Lambda$ of degree $\leq m$. Thus, $(\Lambda_{\deg \leq m})_{m \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a filtration of the $k$-algebra $\Lambda$. In particular, $1 \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq 0}$ and

$$
\Lambda_{\deg \leq i} \Lambda_{\deg \leq j} \subseteq \Lambda_{\deg \leq i+j}
$$

for all $i, j \in \mathbb{N}$. (148)

Also, $\Lambda_{\deg \leq m}$ is the $k$-submodule $0$ of $\Lambda$ whenever $m \in \mathbb{Z}$ is negative; thus, in particular, $\Lambda_{\deg \leq -1} = 0$.

We state an analogue of Lemma 5.10:

Lemma 12.4. Let $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_\ell)$ be any partition. Let $i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\}$ and $j \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\}$. Then:

(a) The $(i, j)$-th cofactor of the matrix $(h_{\lambda u - u + v})_{1 \leq u \leq \ell, 1 \leq v \leq \ell}$ is a homogeneous element of $\Lambda$ of degree $|\lambda| - (\lambda_i - i + j)$.

(b) The $(i, j)$-th cofactor of the matrix $(e_{\lambda u - u + v})_{1 \leq u \leq \ell, 1 \leq v \leq \ell}$ is a homogeneous element of $\Lambda$ of degree $|\lambda| - (\lambda_i - i + j)$.

Proof of Lemma 12.4. Each of the two parts of Lemma 12.4 is proven in the same way as Lemma 5.10, with the obvious modifications to the argument (viz., replacing $S$ by $\Lambda$, and replacing $h_m$ by $h_m$ or by $e_m$). □

Next, we claim a lemma that will yield one half of Theorem 12.3 (namely, that the family $(s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ spans the $k$-module $\Lambda/K$):

Lemma 12.5. Let $\lambda$ be a partition such that $\lambda \not\in P_{k,n}$. Then,

$$
s_\lambda \equiv (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < |\lambda|) \mod K.
$$

We will not prove Lemma 12.5 immediately; instead, let us show a weakening of it first:

Lemma 12.6. Let $\lambda$ be a partition such that $\lambda \not\in P_k$. Then,

$$
s_\lambda \equiv (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < |\lambda|) \mod K.
$$

Proof of Lemma 12.6 (sketched). We have $\lambda \not\in P_k$. Hence, the partition $\lambda$ has more than $k$ parts.

Define a partition $\mu$ by $\mu = \lambda^t$. Hence, $\mu_1$ is the number of parts of $\lambda$. Thus, we have $\mu_1 > k$ (since $\lambda$ has more than $k$ parts), so that $\mu_1 \geq k + 1$. Moreover, $|\mu| = |\lambda|$ (since $\mu = \lambda^t$).

Write the partition $\mu$ in the form $\mu = (\mu_1, \mu_2, \ldots, \mu_\ell)$. For each $j \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\}$, we have $\mu_1 - 1 + \sum_{j \geq 1} j \geq \mu_1 - 1 + 1 = \mu_1 \geq k + 1$ and thus $\mu_1 - 1 + j \in$
\{k + 1, k + 2, k + 3, \ldots \} and therefore
\[ e_{\mu_1 - 1 + j} \]
\[ \equiv b_{\mu_1 - 1 + j - k} \quad \text{(by (144), applied to } \mu_1 - 1 + j \text{ instead of } j) \]
\[ = \left( \text{some symmetric function of degree } < k + (\mu_1 - 1 + j - k) \right) \]
\[ = (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < \mu_1 - 1 + j) \mod K. \tag{149} \]

From \( \mu = \lambda^t \), we obtain \( \mu^t = (\lambda^t)^t = \lambda \). But Corollary 6.5 (applied to \( \mu \) and \( \mu_i \) instead of \( \lambda \) and \( \lambda_i \)) yields
\[ s_{\mu^t} = \det \left( (e_{\mu_i - i + j})_{1 \leq i \leq \ell, 1 \leq j \leq \ell} \right) = \det \left( (e_{\mu_u - u + v})_{1 \leq u \leq \ell, 1 \leq v \leq \ell} \right) \]
\[ = \sum_{j=1}^\ell e_{\mu_1 - 1 + j} \cdot C_j, \tag{150} \]
where \( C_j \) denotes the \((1, j)\)-th cofactor of the \( \ell \times \ell \)-matrix \( (e_{\mu_u - u + v})_{1 \leq u \leq \ell, 1 \leq v \leq \ell} \)
(Here, the last equality sign follows from (19), applied to \( R = \Lambda \) and \( \Lambda = (e_{\mu_u - u + v})_{1 \leq u \leq \ell, 1 \leq v \leq \ell} \) and \( a_{i, v} = e_{\mu_u - u + v} \) and \( i = 1 \)).

For each \( j \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\} \), the element \( C_j \) is the \((1, j)\)-th cofactor of the matrix
\( (e_{\mu_u - u + v})_{1 \leq u \leq \ell, 1 \leq v \leq \ell} \) (by its definition), and thus is a homogeneous element of \( \Lambda \) of degree \(|\mu| - (\mu_1 - 1 + j)\) (by Lemma 12.4 (b), applied to 1 and \( \mu \) instead of \( i \) and \( \lambda \)). Hence,
\[ C_j = (\text{some symmetric function of degree } \leq |\mu| - (\mu_1 - 1 + j)) \tag{151} \]
for each \( j \in \{1, 2, \ldots, \ell\} \). Therefore, (150) becomes
\[ s_{\mu^t} = \sum_{j=1}^\ell e_{\mu_1 - 1 + j} \cdot C_j \]
\[ \equiv (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < \mu_1 - 1 + j) \mod K \quad \text{(by (149))} \]
\[ = (\text{some symmetric function of degree } \leq |\mu| - (\mu_1 - 1 + j)) \tag{by (151)} \]
\[ = \sum_{j=1}^k (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < \mu_1 - 1 + j) \cdot (\text{some symmetric function of degree } \leq |\mu| - (\mu_1 - 1 + j)) \]
\[ = (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < |\mu|) \mod K. \]
In view of $t^i = \lambda$ and $|\mu| = |\lambda|$, this rewrites as

$$s_\lambda \equiv \text{(some symmetric function of degree } < |\lambda| \text{)} \mod K.$$  

This proves Lemma 12.6. \qed

Our next lemma is an analogue of Lemma 5.4:

**Lemma 12.7.** Let $i$ be an integer such that $i > n - k$. Then,

$$h_i \equiv \text{(some symmetric function of degree } < i \text{)} \mod K.$$  

**Proof of Lemma 12.7 (sketched).** We shall prove Lemma 12.7 by strong induction on $i$. Thus, we assume (as the induction hypothesis) that

$$h_j \equiv \text{(some symmetric function of degree } < j \text{)} \mod K \quad (152)$$

for every $j \in \{n - k + 1, n - k + 2, \ldots, i - 1\}$.

If $i \leq n$, then (147) (applied to $j = i$) yields $h_i \equiv a_{i - (n - k)} \mod K$ (since $i \in \{n - k + 1, n - k + 2, \ldots, n\}$), which clearly proves Lemma 12.7 (since $a_{i - (n - k)}$ is a symmetric function of degree $< i$).

Thus, for the rest of this proof, we WLOG assume that $i > n$. Hence, each $t \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$ satisfies $i - t \in \{n - k + 1, n - k + 2, \ldots, i - 1\}$ (since $i - t > n - k$ and $i - t \geq 1$).

On the other hand, each $t \in \{k + 1, k + 2, k + 3, \ldots\}$ satisfies

$$e_t \equiv \text{(some symmetric function of degree } < t \text{)} \mod K. \quad (154)$$

[Proof of (154): Let $t \in \{k + 1, k + 2, k + 3, \ldots\}$. Thus, $t > k$. Hence, the partition $(1^t)$ has more than $k$ parts (since it has $t$ parts), and therefore we have $(1^t) \notin P_k$. Hence, Lemma 12.6 (applied to $\lambda = (1^t)$) yields

$$s_{(1^t)} \equiv \text{(some symmetric function of degree } < |1^t| \text{)} \mod K.$$  

In view of $s_{(1^t)} = e_t$ and $|1^t| = t$, this rewrites as

$$e_t \equiv \text{(some symmetric function of degree } < t \text{)} \mod K.$$  

This proves (154).]
Now, we claim that each \( t \in \{1, 2, \ldots, i\} \) satisfies
\[
\mathbf{h}_{i-t} \mathbf{e}_t \equiv (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < i) \mod K. \tag{155}
\]

[Proof of (155): Let \( t \in \{1, 2, \ldots, i\} \). We are in one of the following two cases:
Case 1: We have \( t \leq k \).
Case 2: We have \( t > k \).

Let us first consider Case 1. In this case, we have \( t \leq k \). Hence, \( t \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\} \).
Thus,
\[
\begin{align*}
\mathbf{h}_{i-t} & \equiv (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < i-t) \mod K \\
& \equiv (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < i-t) \cdot \mathbf{e}_t \\
& = (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < i) \mod K
\end{align*}
\]
(since \( \mathbf{e}_t \) is a symmetric function of degree \( t \)). Hence, (155) is proven in Case 1.

Let us next consider Case 2. In this case, we have \( t > k \). Hence, \( t \in \{k+1, k+2, k+3, \ldots\} \).
Thus,
\[
\begin{align*}
\mathbf{h}_{i-t} & \equiv (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < t) \mod K \\
& \equiv \mathbf{h}_{i-t} \cdot (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < t) \\
& = (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < i) \mod K
\end{align*}
\]
(since \( \mathbf{h}_{i-t} \) is a symmetric function of degree \( i-t \)). Thus, (155) is proven in Case 2.

We have now proven (155) in both Cases 1 and 2. Thus, (155) always holds.
On the other hand, \( i > n-k \geq 0 \) (since \( n \geq k \)), so that \( i \neq 0 \). Now, (46) (applied to \( N = i \)) yields
\[
\sum_{j=0}^{i} (-1)^j \mathbf{h}_{i-j} \mathbf{e}_j = \delta_{0,i} = 0 \quad (\text{since } i \neq 0).
\]
Hence,

\[ 0 = \sum_{j=0}^{i} (-1)^j h_{i-j}e_j = \sum_{t=0}^{i} (-1)^t h_{i-t}e_t \]

(here, we have renamed the summation index \( j \) as \( t \))

\[ = (-1)^0 h_{i-0}e_0 + \sum_{t=1}^{i} (-1)^t h_{i-t}e_t \]

\[ \quad \left( \text{here, we have split off the addend for } t = 0 \right) \]

\[ = h_i + \sum_{t=1}^{i} (-1)^t h_{i-t}e_t. \]

Hence,

\[ h_i = -\sum_{t=1}^{i} (-1)^t h_{i-t}e_t \equiv (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < i) \mod K \]

(by (135))

\[ \equiv -\sum_{t=1}^{i} (-1)^t (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < i) \]

\[ = (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < i) \mod K. \]

This completes the induction step. Thus, Lemma \ref{lemma12.7} is proven. \qedhere

Recall the first Jacobi-Trudi identity ([GriRei20, (2.4.16)]):

\begin{proposition}
Let \( \lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_\ell) \) and \( \mu = (\mu_1, \mu_2, \ldots, \mu_\ell) \) be two partitions. Then,

\[ s_{\lambda/\mu} = \det \left( h_{\lambda_i-\mu_j+i+j} \right)_{1 \leq i \leq \ell, 1 \leq j \leq \ell}. \]

\end{proposition}

Next, we are ready to prove Lemma \ref{lemma12.5}:

\begin{proof}[Proof of Lemma \ref{lemma12.5} (sketched)]
We must prove that

\[ s_{\lambda} \equiv (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < |\lambda|) \mod K. \]

If \( \lambda \notin P_k \), then this follows from Lemma \ref{lemma12.6}. Thus, for the rest of this proof, we WLOG assume that \( \lambda \in P_k \).

From \( \lambda \in P_k \) and \( \lambda \notin P_{k,\mu} \), we conclude that not all parts of the partition \( \lambda \) are \( \leq n - k \). Thus, the first entry \( \lambda_1 \) of \( \lambda \) is \( > n - k \) (since \( \lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \lambda_3 \geq \cdots \)).
But $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k)$ (since $\lambda \in P_k$). Thus, Proposition 12.8 (applied to $\ell = k$, $\mu = \emptyset$ and $\mu_i = 0$) yields

$$s_{\lambda/\emptyset} = \det \left( (h_{\lambda_i - 0 - i + j})_{1 \leq i \leq k, 1 \leq j \leq k} \right) = \det \left( (h_{\lambda_i - i + j})_{1 \leq i \leq k, 1 \leq j \leq k} \right)$$

$$= \det \left( (h_{\lambda_u - u + v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k} \right)$$

(here, we have renamed the indices $i$ and $j$ as $u$ and $v$ in the matrix)

$$= \sum_{j=1}^{k} h_{\lambda_1 - 1 + j} \cdot C_j,$$  \hspace{1cm} (156)

where $C_j$ denotes the $(1, j)$-th cofactor of the $k \times k$-matrix $(h_{\lambda_u - u + v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}$. (Here, the last equality sign follows from (19), applied to $\ell = k$ and $R = \Lambda$ and $A = (h_{\lambda_u - u + v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}$ and $a_{u,v} = h_{\lambda_u - u + v}$ and $i = 1$.)

For each $j \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$, we have $\lambda_1 - 1 + j \geq \lambda_1 - 1 + 1 = \lambda_1 > n - k$ and therefore

$$h_{\lambda_1 - 1 + j} \equiv (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < \lambda_1 - 1 + j) \mod K$$ \hspace{1cm} (157)

(by Lemma 12.7 applied to $i = \lambda_1 - 1 + j$).

For each $j \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$, the polynomial $C_j$ is the $(1, j)$-th cofactor of the matrix $(h_{\lambda_u - u + v})_{1 \leq u \leq k, 1 \leq v \leq k}$ (by its definition), and thus is a homogeneous element of $\Lambda$ of degree $|\lambda| - (\lambda_1 - 1 + j)$ (by Lemma 12.4(a), applied to $\ell = k$ and $i = 1$). Hence,

$$C_j = (\text{some symmetric function of degree } \leq |\lambda| - (\lambda_1 - 1 + j))$$ \hspace{1cm} (158)

for each $j \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$.

Therefore, (156) becomes

$$s_{\lambda/\emptyset} = \sum_{j=1}^{k} h_{\lambda_1 - 1 + j} \cdot C_j \equiv (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < \lambda_1 - 1 + j) \mod K$$ \hspace{1cm} (by (157))

$$= (\text{some symmetric function of degree } \leq |\lambda| - (\lambda_1 - 1 + j))$$ \hspace{1cm} (by (158))

$$\equiv \sum_{j=1}^{k} \left( \text{some symmetric function of degree } < \lambda_1 - 1 + j \right)$$

$$\cdot \left( \text{some symmetric function of degree } \leq |\lambda| - (\lambda_1 - 1 + j) \right)$$

$$= (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < |\lambda|) \mod K.$$
In view of \( s_{\lambda/\emptyset} = s_\lambda \), this rewrites as

\[
s_\lambda \equiv (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < |\lambda|) \mod K.
\]

This proves Lemma 12.5.

**Lemma 12.9.** Let \( N \in \mathbb{N} \). Let \( f \in \Lambda \) be a symmetric function of degree \( < N \). Then, there exists a family \( (c_\kappa)_{\kappa \in \text{Par}; |\kappa|<N} \) of elements of \( k \) such that

\[
f = \sum_{\kappa \in \text{Par}; |\kappa|<N} c_\kappa s_\kappa.
\]

**Proof of Lemma 12.9.** For each \( d \in \mathbb{N} \), we let \( \Lambda_{\text{deg}=d} \) be the \( d \)-th graded part of the graded \( k \)-module \( \Lambda \). This is the \( k \)-submodule of \( \Lambda \) consisting of all homogeneous elements of \( \Lambda \) of degree \( d \) (including the zero vector 0, which is homogeneous of every degree).

Recall that the family \( (s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in \text{Par}} \) is a graded basis of the graded \( k \)-module \( \Lambda \). In other words, for each \( d \in \mathbb{N} \), the family \( (s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in \text{Par}; |\lambda|=d} \) is a basis of the \( k \)-submodule \( \Lambda_{\text{deg}=d} \) of \( \Lambda \). Hence, for each \( d \in \mathbb{N} \), we have

\[
\Lambda_{\text{deg}=d} = \left( \text{the } k \text{-linear span of the family } (s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in \text{Par}; |\lambda|=d} \right)
= \sum_{\lambda \in \text{Par}; |\lambda|=d} k s_\lambda. \tag{159}
\]

The symmetric function \( f \) has degree \( < N \). Hence, we can write \( f \) in the form \( f = \sum_{d=0}^{N-1} f_d \) for some \( f_0, f_1, \ldots, f_{N-1} \in \Lambda \), where each \( f_d \) is a homogeneous symmetric function of degree \( d \). Consider these \( f_0, f_1, \ldots, f_{N-1} \). For each \( d \in \{0,1,\ldots,N-1\} \), the symmetric function \( f_d \) is an element of \( \Lambda \) and is homogeneous of degree \( d \) (as we already know). In other words, for each \( d \in \{0,1,\ldots,N-1\} \), we have

\[
f_d \in \Lambda_{\text{deg}=d}. \tag{160}
\]

Now,

\[
f = \sum_{d=0}^{N-1} f_d \in \sum_{d=0}^{N-1} \Lambda_{\text{deg}=d} = \sum_{d=0}^{N-1} \sum_{\lambda \in \text{Par}; |\lambda|=d} k s_\lambda = \sum_{\lambda \in \text{Par}; |\lambda|<N} \sum_{\kappa \in \text{Par}; |\kappa|<N} k s_\kappa
= \sum_{\lambda \in \text{Par}; |\lambda|<N} \sum_{\kappa \in \text{Par}; |\kappa|<N} k s_\kappa
\]

(here, we have renamed the summation index \( \lambda \) as \( \kappa \) in the sum). In other words, there exists a family \( (c_\kappa)_{\kappa \in \text{Par}; |\kappa|<N} \) of elements of \( k \) such that \( f = \sum_{\kappa \in \text{Par}; |\kappa|<N} c_\kappa s_\kappa \).

This proves Lemma 12.9. \qed
Lemma 12.10. For each $\mu \in \text{Par}$, the element $s_\mu \in \Lambda/K$ belongs to the $k$-submodule of $\Lambda/K$ spanned by the family $(s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$.

Proof of Lemma 12.10. Let $M$ be the $k$-submodule of $\Lambda/K$ spanned by the family $(s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$. We thus must prove that $s_\mu \in M$ for each $\mu \in \text{Par}$.

We shall prove this by strong induction on $|\mu|$. Thus, we fix some $N \in \mathbb{N}$, and we assume (as induction hypothesis) that

$$s_\kappa \in M \quad \text{for each } \kappa \in \text{Par} \text{ satisfying } |\kappa| < N. \quad (161)$$

Now, let $\mu \in \text{Par}$ be such that $|\mu| = N$. We then must show that $s_\mu \in M$.

If $\mu \in P_{k,n}$, then this is obvious (since $s_\mu$ then belongs to the family that spans $M$). Thus, for the rest of this proof, we WLOG assume that $\mu \notin P_{k,n}$. Hence, Lemma 12.5 (applied to $\lambda = \mu$) yields

$$s_\mu \equiv \text{(some symmetric function of degree } < |\mu|) \mod K.$$

In other words, there exists some symmetric function $f \in \Lambda$ of degree $< |\mu|$ such that $s_\mu \equiv f \mod K$. Consider this $f$.

But $f$ is a symmetric function of degree $< |\mu|$. In other words, $f$ is a symmetric function of degree $< N$ (since $|\mu| = N$). Hence, Lemma 12.9 shows that there exists a family $(c_\kappa)_{\kappa \in \text{Par}; \ |\kappa| < N}$ of elements of $k$ such that $f = \sum_{\kappa \in \text{Par}; \ |\kappa| < N} c_\kappa s_\kappa$. Consider this family. From $f = \sum_{\kappa \in \text{Par}; \ |\kappa| < N} c_\kappa s_\kappa$, we obtain

$$f = \sum_{\kappa \in \text{Par}; \ |\kappa| < N} c_\kappa s_\kappa \in \sum_{\kappa \in \text{Par}; \ |\kappa| < N} c_\kappa M \subseteq M \quad \text{(since } M \text{ is a } k\text{-module}).$$

But from $s_\mu \equiv f \mod K$, we obtain $s_\mu = f \in M$. This completes our induction step. Thus, we have proven by strong induction that $s_\mu \in M$ for each $\mu \in \text{Par}$.

This proves Lemma 12.10.

Corollary 12.11. The family $(s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ spans the $k$-module $\Lambda/K$.

Proof of Corollary 12.11. It is well-known that $(s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in \text{Par}}$ is a basis of the $k$-module $\Lambda$. Hence, $(s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in \text{Par}}$ is a spanning set of the $k$-module $\Lambda/K$. Thus, $(s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ is also a spanning set of the $k$-module $\Lambda/K$ (because Lemma 12.10 shows that every element of the first spanning set belongs to the span of the second). This proves Corollary 12.11.

With Corollary 12.11, we have proven “one half” of Theorem 12.3.
12.3. A lemma on filtrations

Next, we recall the definition of a filtration of a $k$-module:

**Definition 12.12.** Let $V$ be a $k$-module. A $k$-module filtration of $V$ means a sequence $(V_m)_{m \in \mathbb{N}}$ of $k$-submodules of $V$ such that $\bigcup_{m \in \mathbb{N}} V_m = V$ and $V_0 \subseteq V_1 \subseteq V_2 \subseteq \cdots$.

For example, $(\Lambda_{\text{deg} \leq m})_{m \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a $k$-module filtration of $\Lambda$.

The filtered $k$-modules are the objects of a category, whose morphisms are $k$-linear maps respecting the filtration. Here is how they are defined:

**Definition 12.13.** Let $V$ and $W$ be two $k$-modules. Let $f : V \to W$ be a $k$-module homomorphism. Let $(V_m)_{m \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a $k$-module filtration of $V$, and let $(W_m)_{m \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a $k$-module filtration of $W$.

We say that the map $f$ respects the filtrations $(V_m)_{m \in \mathbb{N}}$ and $(W_m)_{m \in \mathbb{N}}$ if it satisfies $(f(V_m) \subseteq W_m$ for every $m \in \mathbb{N}$). Sometimes we abbreviate “the map $f$ respects the filtrations $(V_m)_{m \geq 0}$ and $(W_m)_{m \geq 0}$” to “the map $f$ respects the filtration”, as long as the filtrations $(V_m)_{m \in \mathbb{N}}$ and $(W_m)_{m \in \mathbb{N}}$ are clear from the context.

The following elementary fact about filtrations of $k$-modules will be crucial to us:

**Proposition 12.14.** Let $V$ be a $k$-module. Let $(V_m)_{m \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a $k$-module filtration of $V$. Let $f : V \to V$ be a $k$-module homomorphism which satisfies

$$(f(V_m) \subseteq V_{m-1} \quad \text{for every } m \in \mathbb{N}),$$

where $V_{-1}$ denotes the $k$-submodule 0 of $V$. Then:

(a) The $k$-module homomorphism $\text{id} - f$ is an isomorphism.

(b) Each of the maps $\text{id} - f$ and $(\text{id} - f)^{-1}$ respects the filtration.

Proposition 12.14 is classical; a proof can be found in [Grinbe11, Proposition 1.99] (see the detailed version of [Grinbe11] for a detailed proof). Let us restate this proposition in a form adapted for our use:

**Proposition 12.15.** Let $V$ be a $k$-module. Let $(V_m)_{m \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a $k$-module filtration of $V$. Let $g : V \to V$ be a $k$-module homomorphism which satisfies

$$(g(v) \in v + V_{m-1} \quad \text{for every } m \in \mathbb{N} \text{ and each } v \in V_m),$$

where $V_{-1}$ denotes the $k$-submodule 0 of $V$. Then:

(a) The $k$-module homomorphism $g$ is an isomorphism.

(b) Each of the maps $g$ and $g^{-1}$ respects the filtration.
Proof of Proposition \[12.15\] Let \( f : V \to V \) be the \( k \)-module homomorphism \( \text{id} - g \). Then, \( f = \text{id} - g \), so that \( g = \text{id} - f \). Now, for each \( m \in \mathbb{N} \), we have \( f(V_m) \subseteq V_{m-1} \) (since each \( v \in V_m \) satisfies
\[
\underbrace{f(v)}_{= \text{id} - g} = \underbrace{\text{id}(v)}_{= v} - \underbrace{g(v)}_{\in V_{m-1}} = v - g(v) \\
\text{(since } (v) \subseteq V_{m-1} \text{ by } 162) \]
\[
\subseteq V_{m-1} \quad \text{(since } V_{m-1} \text{ is a } k\text{-module)}
\]
). Hence, Proposition \[12.14\] (a) yields that the \( k \)-module homomorphism \( \text{id} - f \) is an isomorphism. In other words, the \( k \)-module homomorphism \( g \) is an isomorphism (since \( g = \text{id} - f \)). This proves Proposition \[12.15\] (a).

(b) Proposition \[12.14\] (b) yields that each of the maps \( \text{id} - f \) and \( (\text{id} - f)^{-1} \) respects the filtration. In other words, each of the maps \( g \) and \( g^{-1} \) respects the filtration (since \( g = \text{id} - f \)). This proves Proposition \[12.15\] (b).

We next move back to symmetric functions. Recall that \( (\Lambda_{\deg \leq m})_{m \in \mathbb{N}} \) is a \( k \)-module filtration of \( \Lambda \). Whenever we say that a map \( \varphi : \Lambda \to \Lambda \) "respects the filtration", we shall be referring to this filtration.

**Lemma 12.16.** Let \( N \in \mathbb{N} \). Let \( f \in \Lambda \) be a symmetric function of degree \(< N \). Then, there exists a family \( (c_{\kappa})_{\kappa \in \text{Par}, |\kappa| < N} \) of elements of \( k \) such that
\[
f = \sum_{\kappa \in \text{Par}, |\kappa| < N} c_{\kappa} e_{\kappa}.
\]

Proof of Lemma \[12.16\] This can be proved using the same argument that we used to prove Lemma \[12.9\] as long as we replace every Schur function \( s_{\mu} \) by the corresponding \( e_{\mu} \).

Recall one of our notations defined long time ago: For any partition \( \lambda \), we let \( e_{\lambda} \) be the corresponding elementary symmetric function in \( \Lambda \). (This is called \( e_{\lambda} \) in [GriRei20, Definition 2.2.1].)

**Lemma 12.17.** Let \( \varphi : \Lambda \to \Lambda \) be a \( k \)-algebra homomorphism. Assume that
\[
\varphi(e_i) \in e_i + \Lambda_{\deg \leq i-1} \quad \text{for each } i \in \{1, 2, 3, \ldots\}.
\]

Then:

(a) We have \( \varphi(v) \in v + \Lambda_{\deg \leq m-1} \) for each \( m \in \mathbb{N} \) and \( v \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq m} \). (Here, \( \Lambda_{\deg \leq m} \) denotes the \( k \)-submodule 0 of \( \Lambda \).)

(b) The map \( \varphi : \Lambda \to \Lambda \) is a \( k \)-algebra isomorphism.

(c) Each of the maps \( \varphi \) and \( \varphi^{-1} \) respects the filtration.
Proof of Lemma 12.17: We shall use the notation $\ell(\lambda)$ defined in Definition 7.7 (a).

Let us first prove a few auxiliary claims:

Claim 1: Let $i, j \in \{-1, 0, 1, \ldots\}$. Then, $\Lambda_{\deg \leq i} \Lambda_{\deg \leq j} \subseteq \Lambda_{\deg \leq i+j}$.

[Proof of Claim 1: If one of $i$ and $j$ is $-1$, then Claim 1 holds for obvious reasons (since $\Lambda_{\deg \leq -1} = 0$ and thus $\Lambda_{\deg \leq i} \Lambda_{\deg \leq j} = 0$ in this case). Hence, for the rest of this proof, we WLOG assume that none of $i$ and $j$ is $-1$. Hence, $i$ and $j$ belong to $\mathbb{N}$ (since $i, j \in \{-1, 0, 1, \ldots\}$). Thus, (148) yields $\Lambda_{\deg \leq i} \Lambda_{\deg \leq j} \subseteq \Lambda_{\deg \leq i+j}$. This proves Claim 1.]

Claim 2: Let $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}$. Let $a \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq a}$ and $b \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq b}$. Let $u \in a + \Lambda_{\deg \leq a - 1}$ and $v \in b + \Lambda_{\deg \leq b - 1}$. Then, $uv \in ab + \Lambda_{\deg \leq a + b - 1}$.

[Proof of Claim 2: For every $m \in \mathbb{N}$, we have $\Lambda_{\deg \leq m - 1} \subseteq \Lambda_{\deg \leq m}$ (indeed, this is clear from the definitions of $\Lambda_{\deg \leq m - 1}$ and $\Lambda_{\deg \leq m}$). Thus, $\Lambda_{\deg \leq a - 1} \subseteq \Lambda_{\deg \leq a}$ and $\Lambda_{\deg \leq b - 1} \subseteq \Lambda_{\deg \leq b}$.

We have $u \in a + \Lambda_{\deg \leq a - 1}$. In other words, $u = a + x$ for some $x \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq a - 1}$. Consider this $x$.

We have $v \in b + \Lambda_{\deg \leq b - 1}$. In other words, $v = b + y$ for some $y \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq b - 1}$. Consider this $y$.

We have $v \in b + \Lambda_{\deg \leq b - 1}$. In other words, $v = b + y$ for some $y \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq b - 1}$. Consider this $y$.

We have $v \in b + \Lambda_{\deg \leq b - 1}$. In other words, $v = b + y$ for some $y \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq b - 1}$. Consider this $y$.

We have $v \in b + \Lambda_{\deg \leq b - 1}$. In other words, $v = b + y$ for some $y \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq b - 1}$. Consider this $y$.]

is a $k$-module).

Now,

\[
\begin{array}{l}
\begin{align*}
\chi & \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq a - 1} \Lambda_{\deg \leq b} \subseteq \Lambda_{\deg \leq (a-1)+b} \\
\nu & \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq a - 1} \Lambda_{\deg \leq b} \subseteq \Lambda_{\deg \leq (a-1)+b}
\end{align*}
\end{array}
\]

(by Claim 1, applied to $i = a - 1$ and $j = b$)

\[= \Lambda_{\deg \leq a+b-1} \quad \text{(since $a - 1 + b = a + b - 1$)}. \]

Furthermore,

\[
\begin{array}{l}
\begin{align*}
\alpha & \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq a} \Lambda_{\deg \leq b-1} \subseteq \Lambda_{\deg \leq a+(b-1)} \\
\beta & \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq a} \Lambda_{\deg \leq b-1} \subseteq \Lambda_{\deg \leq a+(b-1)}
\end{align*}
\end{array}
\]

(by Claim 1, applied to $i = a$ and $j = b - 1$)

\[= \Lambda_{\deg \leq a+b-1} \quad \text{(since $a + (b - 1) = a + b - 1$)}. \]

Now,

\[
\begin{array}{l}
\begin{align*}
u = (a+x)\nu = a \nu + x\nu = a(b+y) + xv & \in ab + \Lambda_{\deg \leq a+b-1} \\
& \subseteq ab + \Lambda_{\deg \leq a+b-1} \quad \text{(since $\Lambda_{\deg \leq a+b-1}$ is a $k$-module)}
\end{align*}
\end{array}
\]

\[\subseteq ab + \Lambda_{\deg \leq a+b-1}.
\]
This proves Claim 2.

Claim 3: We have $\varphi(e_\lambda) \in e_\lambda + \Lambda_{\deg \leq |\lambda| - 1}$ for each partition $\lambda$.

[Proof of Claim 3: We shall prove Claim 3 by induction on $\ell(\lambda)$.

Induction base: Claim 3 is clearly true when $\ell(\lambda) = 0$. This completes the induction base.

Induction step: Let $r$ be a positive integer. Assume (as the induction hypothesis) that Claim 3 is true whenever $\ell(\lambda) = r - 1$. We must prove that Claim 3 is true whenever $\ell(\lambda) = r$.

So let $\lambda$ be a partition such that $\ell(\lambda) = r$. We must prove that $\varphi(e_\lambda) \in e_\lambda + \Lambda_{\deg \leq |\lambda| - 1}$.

We have $\ell(\lambda) = r$. Thus, the entries $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_r$ of $\lambda$ are positive, while $\lambda_{r+1} = \lambda_{r+2} = \lambda_{r+3} = \cdots = 0$. Hence, $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_r)$.

We have $1 \in \{1, 2, \ldots, r\}$ (since $r$ is positive). Hence, $\lambda_1$ is positive (since $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_r$ are positive).

Let $\bar{\lambda}$ be the partition $(\lambda_2, \lambda_3, \lambda_4, \ldots)$. Then, $\bar{\lambda} = (\lambda_2, \lambda_3, \lambda_4, \ldots) = (\lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots, \lambda_r)$ (since $\lambda_{r+1} = \lambda_{r+2} = \lambda_{r+3} = \cdots = 0$), so that $\ell(\bar{\lambda}) = r - 1$ (since $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_r$ are positive). Hence, our induction hypothesis shows that Claim 3 holds for $\bar{\lambda}$ instead of $\lambda$. In other words, we have $\varphi(e_{\bar{\lambda}}) \in e_{\bar{\lambda}} + \Lambda_{\deg \leq |\bar{\lambda}| - 1}$.

But from $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_r)$ and $\bar{\lambda} = (\lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots, \lambda_r)$, we see easily that $|\lambda| = \lambda_1 + |\bar{\lambda}|$. Furthermore, $\lambda_1 \in \{1, 2, 3, \ldots\}$ (since $\lambda_1$ is positive). Hence, (163) (applied to $i = \lambda_1$) yields $\varphi(e_{\lambda_1}) \in e_{\lambda_1} + \Lambda_{\deg \leq |\lambda_1| - 1}$.

The symmetric function $e_{\lambda_1}$ is homogeneous of degree $\lambda_1$. Thus, $e_{\lambda_1} \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq \lambda_1}$.

The symmetric function $e_{\bar{\lambda}}$ is homogeneous of degree $|\bar{\lambda}|$. Thus, $e_{\bar{\lambda}} \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq |\bar{\lambda}|}$.

We have now shown that $e_{\lambda_1} \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq \lambda_1}$ and $e_{\bar{\lambda}} \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq |\bar{\lambda}|}$ and $\varphi(e_{\lambda_1}) \in e_{\lambda_1} + \Lambda_{\deg \leq \lambda_1 - 1}$ and $\varphi(e_{\bar{\lambda}}) \in e_{\bar{\lambda}} + \Lambda_{\deg \leq |\bar{\lambda}| - 1}$. Thus, Claim 2 (applied to $\alpha = \lambda_1$, $\beta = |\bar{\lambda}|$, $a = e_{\lambda_1}$, $b = e_{\bar{\lambda}}$, $u = \varphi(e_{\lambda_1})$ and $v = \varphi(e_{\bar{\lambda}})$) yields that

$$\varphi(e_{\lambda_1}) \varphi(e_{\bar{\lambda}}) \in e_{\lambda_1}e_{\bar{\lambda}} + \Lambda_{\deg \leq \lambda_1 + |\bar{\lambda}| - 1} = e_{\lambda_1}e_{\bar{\lambda}} + \Lambda_{\deg \leq |\lambda| - 1}$$

(164)

(since $\lambda_1 + |\bar{\lambda}| = |\lambda|$).

But $\bar{\lambda} = (\lambda_2, \lambda_3, \lambda_4, \ldots)$; thus, the definition of $e_{\bar{\lambda}}$ yields

$$e_{\bar{\lambda}} = e_{\lambda_2}e_{\lambda_3}e_{\lambda_4} \cdots$$

(165)

Proof. Let $\lambda$ be a partition such that $\ell(\lambda) = 0$. We must show that $\varphi(e_\lambda) \in e_\lambda + \Lambda_{\deg \leq |\lambda| - 1}$.

We have $\lambda = \emptyset$ (since $\ell(\lambda) = 0$) and thus $e_\lambda = e_\emptyset = 1$. Hence, $\varphi(e_\lambda) = \varphi(1) = 1$ (since $\varphi$ is a $k$-algebra homomorphism). Thus, $\varphi(e_\lambda) - e_\lambda = 1 - 1 = 0 \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq |\lambda| - 1}$ (since $\Lambda_{\deg \leq |\lambda| - 1}$ is a $k$-module), so that $\varphi(e_\lambda) \in e_\lambda + \Lambda_{\deg \leq |\lambda| - 1}$. This is precisely what we needed to show; qed.
But the definition of $e_{\lambda}$ yields

$$e_{\lambda} = e_{\lambda_1} e_{\lambda_2} e_{\lambda_3} \cdots = e_{\lambda_1} \left( e_{\lambda_2} e_{\lambda_3} e_{\lambda_4} \cdots \right) = e_{\lambda_1} e_{\lambda_2} e_{\lambda_3} \cdots$$

(by (168))

(166)

Applying the map $\varphi$ to both sides of this equality, we obtain

$$\varphi (e_{\lambda}) = \varphi (e_{\lambda} e_{\lambda_1} e_{\lambda_2} e_{\lambda_3} \cdots) = \varphi (e_{\lambda_1} e_{\lambda_2} e_{\lambda_3} \cdots) = e_{\lambda_1} e_{\lambda_2} e_{\lambda_3} \cdots$$

(by (165))

Now, forget that we fixed $\lambda$. We thus have proven that $\varphi (e_{\lambda}) \in e_{\lambda} + \Lambda_{\deg \leq |\lambda| - 1}$ for each partition $\lambda$ satisfying $\ell (\lambda) = r$. In other words, Claim 3 is true whenever $\ell (\lambda) = r$. This completes the induction step. Thus, Claim 3 is proven.

We also notice that

$$\Lambda_{\deg \leq -1} \subseteq \Lambda_{\deg \leq 0} \subseteq \Lambda_{\deg \leq 1} \subseteq \Lambda_{\deg \leq 2} \subseteq \cdots$$

(167)

(a) Let $m \in \mathbb{N}$. Let $v \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq m}$. We must prove that $\varphi (v) \in v + \Lambda_{\deg \leq m - 1}$.

We know that $v$ is a symmetric function of degree $\leq m$ (since $v \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq m}$). Thus, $v$ is a symmetric function of degree $< m + 1$. Hence, Lemma 12.16 (applied to $N = m + 1$ and $f = v$) yields that there exists a family $(c_\kappa)_{\kappa \in \Par}$ of elements of $k$ such that

$$v = \sum_{\kappa \in \Par, \ |\kappa| < m + 1} c_\kappa e_\kappa.$$  

(168)

Consider this $(c_\kappa)_{\kappa \in \Par, \ |\kappa| < m + 1}$.

For every $\kappa \in \Par$ satisfying $|\kappa| < m + 1$, we have

$$\varphi (e_\kappa) \in e_\kappa + \Lambda_{\deg \leq m - 1}.$$  

(169)

[Proof of (169): Let $\kappa \in \Par$ be such that $|\kappa| < m + 1$. From $|\kappa| < m + 1$, we obtain $|\kappa| - 1 < m$ and thus $|\kappa| - 1 \leq m - 1$ (since $|\kappa| - 1$ and $m$ are integers). Hence, $\Lambda_{\deg \leq |\kappa| - 1} \subseteq \Lambda_{\deg \leq m - 1}$ (by (168)).

But Claim 3 (applied to $\lambda = \kappa$) yields $\varphi (e_\kappa) \in e_\kappa + \Lambda_{\deg \leq |\kappa| - 1} \subseteq e_\kappa + \Lambda_{\deg \leq m - 1}$. This proves (169).]
Now, applying the map $\varphi$ to both sides of the equality \((168)\), we obtain

$$
\varphi(v) = \varphi \left( \sum_{\kappa \in \text{Par}; \ |\kappa| < m+1} c_\kappa e_\kappa \right) = \sum_{\kappa \in \text{Par}; \ |\kappa| < m+1} c_\kappa \varphi(e_\kappa) \quad \text{(since the map \(\varphi\) is \(k\)-linear)}
$$

\[
\in \sum_{\kappa \in \text{Par}; \ |\kappa| < m+1} c_\kappa \left( e_\kappa + \Lambda_{\deg \leq m-1} \right) = \sum_{\kappa \in \text{Par}; \ |\kappa| < m+1} \left( c_\kappa e_\kappa + c_\kappa \Lambda_{\deg \leq m-1} \right)
\]

\[
= \sum_{\kappa \in \text{Par}; \ |\kappa| < m+1} c_\kappa e_\kappa + \sum_{\kappa \in \text{Par}; \ |\kappa| < m+1} c_\kappa \Lambda_{\deg \leq m-1} \subseteq v + \Lambda_{\deg \leq m-1}.
\]

(by \((168)\))

This proves Lemma \textcolor{red}{12.17}\textbf{(a)}.

\textbf{(b)} The map $\varphi : \Lambda \to \Lambda$ is a $k$-algebra homomorphism, thus a $k$-module homomorphism. Lemma \textcolor{red}{12.17}\textbf{(a)} shows that $\varphi(v) \in v + \Lambda_{\deg \leq m-1}$ for each $m \in \mathbb{N}$ and $v \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq m}$, where $\Lambda_{\deg \leq 1}$ denotes the $k$-submodule 0 of $\Lambda$. Hence, Proposition \textcolor{red}{12.15}\textbf{(a)} (applied to $V = \Lambda$, $V_m = \Lambda_{\deg \leq m}$ and $g = \varphi$) yields that the $k$-module homomorphism $\varphi$ is an isomorphism. Hence, this homomorphism $\varphi$ is bijective and thus a $k$-algebra isomorphism (since it is a $k$-algebra homomorphism). This proves Lemma \textcolor{red}{12.17}\textbf{(b)}.

\textbf{(c)} The map $\varphi : \Lambda \to \Lambda$ is a $k$-algebra homomorphism, thus a $k$-module homomorphism. Lemma \textcolor{red}{12.17}\textbf{(a)} shows that $\varphi(v) \in v + \Lambda_{\deg \leq m-1}$ for each $m \in \mathbb{N}$ and $v \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq m}$, where $\Lambda_{\deg \leq 1}$ denotes the $k$-submodule 0 of $\Lambda$. Hence, Proposition \textcolor{red}{12.15}\textbf{(b)} (applied to $V = \Lambda$, $V_m = \Lambda_{\deg \leq m}$ and $g = \varphi$) yields that each of the maps $\varphi$ and $\varphi^{-1}$ respects the filtration. This proves Lemma \textcolor{red}{12.17}\textbf{(c)}.

\section{12.4. Linear independence}

\textit{Proof of Theorem} \textcolor{red}{12.3} Corollary \textcolor{red}{12.11} shows that the family $(s_\lambda)_{\lambda \in P_n}$ spans the $k$-module $\Lambda / K$. We need to prove that it is a basis of $\Lambda / K$.

Let us first recall that $\Lambda / \langle e_{k+1}, e_{k+2}, e_{k+3}, \ldots \rangle \cong S$. More precisely, there is a canonical surjective $k$-algebra homomorphism $\pi : \Lambda \to S$ which is given by substituting 0 for each of the variables $x_{k+1}, x_{k+2}, x_{k+3}, \ldots$; the kernel of this homomorphism is precisely the ideal $\langle e_{k+1}, e_{k+2}, e_{k+3}, \ldots \rangle$ of $\Lambda$. This homomorphism sends each $e_{h,m} \in \Lambda$ to the polynomial $h_m \in S$ defined in \textcolor{red}{1}.

It is well-known that the commutative $k$-algebra $\Lambda$ is freely generated by its elements $e_1, e_2, e_3, \ldots$. Hence, we can define an $k$-algebra homomorphism $\varphi : \Lambda \to \Lambda$ by letting

$$
\varphi(e_i) = e_i \quad \text{for each } i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}; \\
\varphi(e_i) = e_i - b_{i-k} \quad \text{for each } i \in \{k+1, k+2, k+3, \ldots\}.
$$

(170)

(171)
Consider this $\varphi$. Then, we have $\varphi(e_i) \in e_i + \Lambda_{\deg \leq i-1}$ for each $i \in \{1,2,3,\ldots\}$.

Hence, Lemma 12.17(a) shows that we have

$$\varphi(v) \in v + \Lambda_{\deg \leq m-1} \quad \text{for each } m \in \mathbb{N} \text{ and } v \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq m}. \quad (172)$$

(Here, $\Lambda_{\deg \leq -1}$ denotes the $k$-submodule 0 of $\Lambda$.) Furthermore, Lemma 12.17(b) shows that the map $\varphi : \Lambda \to \Lambda$ is a $k$-algebra isomorphism. In other words, $\varphi$ is an automorphism of the $k$-algebra $\Lambda$. Finally, Lemma 12.17(c) shows that each of the maps $\varphi$ and $\varphi^{-1}$ respects the filtration.

The map $\varphi$ is a $k$-algebra automorphism of $\Lambda$ and sends the elements

$$e_{k+1}, e_{k+2}, e_{k+3}, \ldots \quad \text{to} \quad e_{k+1} - b_1, e_{k+2} - b_2, e_{k+3} - b_3, \ldots,$$

respectively (according to (171)). Hence, it sends the ideal $\langle e_{k+1}, e_{k+2}, e_{k+3}, \ldots \rangle$ of $\Lambda$ to the ideal $\langle e_{k+1} - b_1, e_{k+2} - b_2, e_{k+3} - b_3, \ldots \rangle$ of $\Lambda$. In other words,

$$\varphi\left(\langle e_{k+1}, e_{k+2}, e_{k+3}, \ldots \rangle\right) = \langle e_{k+1} - b_1, e_{k+2} - b_2, e_{k+3} - b_3, \ldots \rangle. \quad (173)$$

For each $i \in \{1,2,\ldots,k\}$, define $c_i \in \Lambda$ by

$$c_i = \varphi^{-1}(\varphi(h_{n-k+i}) - h_{n-k+i} + a_i). \quad (174)$$

This is well-defined, since $\varphi$ is an isomorphism. For each $i \in \{1,2,\ldots,k\}$, we have

$$\varphi(h_{n-k+i} - c_i) = \varphi(h_{n-k+i}) = \varphi(h_{n-k+i} - c_i) = \varphi(h_{n-k+i} - c_i) = h_{n-k+i} + a_i,$$

(since $\varphi$ is a $k$-algebra homomorphism)

$$= \varphi(h_{n-k+i}) - (\varphi(h_{n-k+i}) - h_{n-k+i} + a_i) = h_{n-k+i} - a_i.$$

**Proof.** Let $i \in \{1,2,3,\ldots\}$. We must prove that $\varphi(e_i) \in e_i + \Lambda_{\deg \leq i-1}$.

If $i \in \{1,2,\ldots,k\}$, then this is obvious (since the definition of $\varphi$ yields $\varphi(e_i) = e_i = e_i + 0 \in e_i + \Lambda_{\deg \leq i-1}$ in this case). Hence, for the rest of this proof, we WLOG assume that we don’t have $i \in \{1,2,\ldots,k\}$. Hence,

$$i \in \{1,2,3,\ldots\} \setminus \{1,2,\ldots,k\} = \{k+1, k+2, k+3, \ldots\}.$$

Thus, the definition of $\varphi$ yields $\varphi(e_i) = e_i - b_{i-k}$. But (141) (applied to $i-k$ instead of $i$) yields that

$$b_{i-k} = \begin{cases} \text{some symmetric function of degree } < k + (i-k) \leq i \end{cases}$$

$$= (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < i)$$

$$= (\text{some symmetric function of degree } \leq i-1) \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq i-1}.$$

Thus, $\varphi(e_i) = e_i - b_{i-k} \in e_i - \Lambda_{\deg \leq i-1} = e_i + \Lambda_{\deg \leq i-1}$ (since $\Lambda_{\deg \leq i-1}$ is a $k$-module).

Qed.
In other words, the map \( \varphi \) sends the elements \( h_{n-k+1} - c_1, h_{n-k+2} - c_2, \ldots, h_n - c_k \) to the elements \( h_{n-k+1} - a_1, h_{n-k+2} - a_2, \ldots, h_n - a_k \), respectively. Thus, it sends the ideal \( \langle h_{n-k+1} - c_1, h_{n-k+2} - c_2, \ldots, h_n - c_k \rangle \) of \( \Lambda \) to the ideal \( \langle h_{n-k+1} - a_1, h_{n-k+2} - a_2, \ldots, h_n - a_k \rangle \) of \( \Lambda \) (since \( \varphi \) is a \( k \)-algebra automorphism). In other words,

\[
\varphi \left( \langle h_{n-k+1} - c_1, h_{n-k+2} - c_2, \ldots, h_n - c_k \rangle \right) = \langle h_{n-k+1} - a_1, h_{n-k+2} - a_2, \ldots, h_n - a_k \rangle.
\] (175)

Recall that \( \varphi \) is a \( k \)-algebra homomorphism; thus,

\[
\varphi \left( \langle h_{n-k+1} - c_1, h_{n-k+2} - c_2, \ldots, h_n - c_k \rangle \right) + \langle e_{k+1}, e_{k+2}, e_{k+3}, \ldots \rangle = \langle h_{n-k+1} - a_1, h_{n-k+2} - a_2, \ldots, h_n - a_k \rangle + \langle e_{k+1} - b_1, e_{k+2} - b_2, e_{k+3} - b_3, \ldots \rangle = K
\] (176)

(by the definition of \( K \)).

For each \( i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\} \), let us consider the projection \( \overline{c_i} \) of \( c_i \in \Lambda \) onto \( S \). Let \( l_c \) denote the ideal of \( S \) generated by the \( k \) differences

\[
h_{n-k+1} - \overline{c_1}, h_{n-k+2} - \overline{c_2}, \ldots, h_n - \overline{c_k}.
\]

Moreover, for each \( i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\} \), the element \( c_i \) is a symmetric function of degree \( < n - k + i \) \(^{34}\). Hence, for each \( i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\} \), the projection \( \overline{c_i} \)

\(^{34}\)Proof. Let \( i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, k\} \). Thus, \( h_{n-k+i} \) is a homogeneous symmetric function of degree \( n - k + i \). Hence, \( h_{n-k+i} \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq n-k+i} \). Thus, (172) (applied to \( m = n - k + i \) and \( \nu = h_{n-k+i} \)) yields \( \varphi(h_{n-k+i}) \in h_{n-k+i} + \Lambda_{\deg \leq n-k+i-1} \). In other words, \( \varphi(h_{n-k+i}) - h_{n-k+i} \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq n-k+i-1} \). Also, (140) yields

\[
a_i = (\text{some symmetric function of degree } < n - k + i) = (\text{some symmetric function of degree } \leq n - k + i - 1) \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq n-k+i-1}.
\]

Hence,

\[
\varphi \left( h_{n-k+i} \right) - h_{n-k+i} + a_i \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq n-k+i} + \Lambda_{\deg \leq n-k+i-1} \subseteq \Lambda_{\deg \leq n-k+i-1}
\]

(since \( \Lambda_{\deg \leq n-k+i-1} \) is a \( k \)-module). But the map \( \varphi^{-1} \) respects the filtration; in other words, we have \( \varphi^{-1}(\Lambda_{\deg \leq m}) \subseteq \Lambda_{\deg \leq m} \) for each \( m \in \mathbb{N} \). Applying this to \( m = n - k + i - 1 \), we obtain \( \varphi^{-1}(\Lambda_{\deg \leq n-k+i-1}) \subseteq \Lambda_{\deg \leq n-k+i-1} \). Now, (174) becomes

\[
\overline{c_i} = \varphi^{-1} \left( \varphi \left( h_{n-k+i} \right) - h_{n-k+i} + a_i \right) \in \Lambda_{\deg \leq n-k+i-1} \subseteq \Lambda_{\deg \leq n-k+i-1}.
\]
of $c_i \in \Lambda$ onto $S$ is a symmetric polynomial of degree $< n - k + i$ (because projecting a symmetric function from $\Lambda$ onto $S$ cannot raise the degree). Thus, Theorem 2.7 (applied to $\overline{c_i}$ and $I_c$ instead of $a_i$ and $J$) yields that the $k$-module $S/I_c$ is free with basis $(\overline{s_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$. Hence, this $k$-module $S/I_c$ is free and has a basis of size $|P_{k,n}|$.

But $\varphi$ is a $k$-algebra automorphism of $\Lambda$. Thus, we have a $k$-module isomorphism

$$\Lambda/ \langle h_{n-k+1} - c_1, h_{n-k+2} - c_2, \ldots, h_n - c_k \rangle \cong \Lambda/ \varphi(\langle h_{n-k+1} - c_1, h_{n-k+2} - c_2, \ldots, h_n - c_k \rangle)$$

(by (176))

$$= \Lambda/K.$$

Hence, we have the following chain of $k$-module isomorphisms:

$$\Lambda/K \cong \Lambda/ \langle h_{n-k+1} - c_1, h_{n-k+2} - c_2, \ldots, h_n - c_k \rangle \cong \Lambda/ \langle e_{k+1}, e_{k+2}, e_{k+3}, \ldots \rangle / \langle h_{n-k+1} - c_1, h_{n-k+2} - c_2, \ldots, h_n - c_k \rangle$$

(by the definition of $I_c$)

$$= S/ \langle h_{n-k+1} - c_1, h_{n-k+2} - c_2, \ldots, h_n - c_k \rangle = S/I_c.$$

Hence, the $k$-module $\Lambda/K$ is free and has a basis of size $|P_{k,n}|$ (since the $k$-module $S/I_c$ is free and has a basis of size $|P_{k,n}|$).

Now, recall that the family $(\overline{s_\lambda})_{\lambda \in P_{k,n}}$ spans the $k$-module $\Lambda/K$. Hence, Lemma 5.3 shows that this family must be a basis of $\Lambda/K$ (since it has the same size as a basis of $\Lambda/K$). This proves Theorem 12.3.

**References**


See also http://www.cip.ifi.lmu.de/~grinberg/algebra/HopfComb-sols.pdf for a version that gets updated.


https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-211-77417-5
